

ADVANCED CHRONOLOGICAL

STUDY OF

The HOLY BIBLE

CONTAINING THE

Old and New Testaments

RICK DAVID

ADVANCED CHRONOLOGICAL

STUDY OF

The HOLY BIBLE

RICK DAVID

Copyright 2014, Pat “Rick David” Yanello, All Rights Reserved

Published by Rick David. First Edition 2001, Last Updated Edition 2014.

Benefits, Goals and Objectives of this Study

Study the Bible chronologically to understand how things fit in their proper places within it.

Learn the main reason why the Bible was written to give you the broadest overall understanding as to its meaning and purpose.

Listen to the Bible speak in defense of itself, consider valid and compelling evidence as to its validity or reliability, learn new or interesting facts about the Bible, and consider credible and detailed information about who wrote it, and also why no other books are included in it.

Discern which translations of the Bible are trustworthy and which ones are not.

Learn the difference between truth and opinion, so that you can know and speak the truth to others.

Study the different Bible Ages or Time Periods.

See in the O.T. how and why God saved certain people by grace or destroyed them by His wrath.

Understand how Messianic prophecy fits in to each Bible Age or covenant.

Learn how Jesus fulfilled or completed Moses' Law or Covenant.

Understand the specific thing which marked the beginning or start of the Christian Age, and why this is so very important to know.

Learn the purpose of the apostles and how they were commanded to make disciples of Christ in all the nations.

Understand how God will favor you with the salvation of your soul, the forgiveness of your sins, and eternity with Him, when you start to repent and believe that Jesus Christ died for your sins, was buried, and raised from the dead on the third day, and respond to this by calling on the name of the Lord in the way He commanded us to do so.

Study how a risen Jesus said we must be saved, and how the apostles led others to be saved.

Learn what being saved by grace means and what it does not mean, to gain a much deeper and truer understanding of this subject.

Increase your faith toward God, and learn how to more perfectly show your faith to God and others.

Study the true and complete definition of repentance, along with how to repent of certain sins so that God will not condemn you for continuing to practice them.

Learn about the good confession, how it is related to the good belief, when to testify it, and how this relates to your eternal salvation.

Study for great blessings of water baptism, when someone should be baptized, how it is connected to calling on the name of the Lord to be saved, and what the word literally and figuratively means.

Study certain verses which will encourage you to continue walking in the saving grace of God.

About the Author

Greetings in the Lord Jesus Christ. I am Patrick “Rick” David Yanello. By God’s choosing, I am an evangelist, a husband, a father, a publisher, a home schooling father, and more. I have authored several Bible studies which have been used by tens of thousands of people worldwide. I am truly blessed by God to establish FreeBibleStudy.org and FreeBibleSchool.org, and the core curriculum used therein. These websites have had millions of page hits. I was born and raised in Pennsylvania, but I have also lived in Texas and North Carolina. I have personally served in the spreading of the gospel in many communities throughout the United States, and in Kenya, Tanzania, and Mexico.

Translation: Unless otherwise noted, all Scripture references from the New American Standard Bible, Copyright, The Lockman Foundation 1960, 1962, 1963, 1968, 1971, 1972, 1973, 1975, 1977, 1995. Used by permission. Bold, brackets, and underlines made by Patrick David Yanello.

Benefits of studying the Bible

What are the benefits of studying the holy Bible?

Next, consider five of them. "All Scripture is inspired by God and **profitable** [1] for teaching, [2] for reproof, [3] for correction, [4] for training in righteousness; so that the man of God may be adequate, equipped [5] for every good work" (2 Tim 3:16, 17).

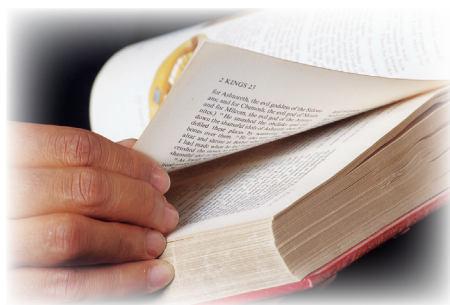
1. KNOWLEDGE

"All Scripture is... profitable for teaching". This implies we lack knowledge and need to learn some things. So, we need taught. There are key things we may not know about God and his will for our lives. We can be ignorant of them. So, we need informed about them.

We all have been ignorant of God!

As a whole, we are or have been very ignorant of God and his will for our lives! For example, concerning all of mankind (including the Jews), God said, "there is **none** who **understands**" (Ro 3:11; Ps 14:2). So, God has declared to all that everyone, at some point, is or has become ignorant of His will, both Jew and Gentile, and therefore all need taught.

Ignorance of God's will concerning Jesus Christ is a sin (Ac 17:30; Eph 4:17-19). And, "Those who do



not know God... will pay the penalty of eternal destruction" (2 Thess 1:8 9). So, we must have sufficient knowledge of God to be saved.

In conclusion, the Scripture is beneficial for teaching us and giving us a clear understanding of God and his will and commandment for our lives. We need knowledge of God. There are some things that we simply do not understand about God. We need instruction.

Notes: As Paul said to the church in Corinth, "Become sober-minded as you ought, and stop sinning; for some have no knowledge of God. I speak this to your shame" (1 Cor 15:34). He was speaking about the lack of knowledge in some of the members of this church! In some ways, they were ignorant of God. So, just because we go to church, or just because we are a member of a church, this does not mean that we know God. For we could still be sinning concerning the knowledge of God. We could still be untaught. Even more, "the untaught... distort... the Scriptures, to their own destruction" (2 Pe 3:16). Therefore, we need taught by the Scriptures so that we will not distort, pervert, misuse, or twist them and their meaning and purpose, and by doing so be condemned by God. Indeed, in our study of the Bible, we need to be "diligent," not lazy or neglectful, so that we will then be able to use them "accurately" (2 Tim 2:15). Indeed, we must continually renew and refresh our mind with the Scriptures so that we may even be able to "prove" or determine what actually is the will of God (Ro 12:2).

2. DISCIPLINE

"All Scripture is... profitable... for reproof". This implies we need disciplined for some very bad thinking or behavior. Now, to reprove means to verbally discipline or reprimand (severely), to refute, to adamantly oppose, convict or prove wrong, with the idea of putting one to shame for his fault, even demanding an explanation. So, we need reproof by the Scripture because we can do reprehensible things!

We all have done bad things!

Jesus said, "No one is good except God alone" (Mk 10:18). So, we are all somewhat bad. We are all sinners (Ro 3:23). We are essentially bad or evil. We are not good, like God! Likewise, Jesus broadly charged people (including His very own disciples) with "being evil," even the leading religious men of His day (Mt 7:11; 12:34). So, the Scripture is beneficial for reproofing us. Now, if we are not doing good, but evil, and God has declared "there is none who does good" (Ro 3:12), we then need to be reproofed by the Bible for discipline. We all need disciplined. We all have not done good. We all have done bad things. For we can be undisciplined!

Now, Judges have been know to reprove criminals for their crimes. For example, in front of the whole court, a judge will denounce and reprove someone who has broken a very grievous part of the law of the land, especially if one shows no remorse

or repentance for his behavior. A judge will even declare to a person that his actions were evil or bad. So, men understand this concept of reproof for discipline. For clearly, mankind has a history and a reputation for doing reprehensible things. Therefore, men need reproofed. Likewise, when we do bad things, we need reproofed by the Scriptures.

Notes: (a) Even Paul reproofed his fellow apostle, Peter, a Jew, for acting badly and evil toward Gentile Christians (Ga 2:11-14). (b) Even Peter reproofed Simon, a new Christian, for acting evil about one of the gifts of God (Ac 8:20). (c) Reproof can give wisdom (Pr 29:15). We are foolish. We need wisdom. (d) We need to be reproofed to be saved (READ Pr 10:17; 15:10; 15:31). "Reproofs for discipline are the way of life" (Pr 6:23). (e) Likewise, a father reproofs his son in whom he delights (Pr 3:12). I myself have and will reprove my own children, and they very well know it! (f) Even the Lord himself reproofs for "discipline" everyone whom he "loves" and "receives" (He 12:5, 6). So, even if God delights in you, be prepared to receive some serious reproof from the Lord. It should prove, test, convince or convict you of the evidence, the truth, concerning your bad nature, and therefore cause you to be disciplined and change for the better. This is what reproof is supposed to accomplish.

3. CORRECTION

"All Scripture is... profitable... for correction". This implies we are wrong, inaccurate, mistaken, or in error. So, we are in need of correction. We all must accept correction from the Bible.

We can be greatly mistaken!

For example, concerning even many of the most basic subjects in the Scriptures (such as marriage, adultery, the resurrection, heaven, and other things), Jesus told certain leading religious men that they were "mistaken, not understanding the Scriptures" (Mt 22:29). Again, He told them that they were "**greatly mistaken**" (Mk 12:27).

So, we can see that even leaders can be not a little mistaken about certain Bible subjects, even very important basic ones. These leaders had incorrect conclusions, impressions, or "take-aways" from the Scripture. And we can be "carried away by the error of unprincipled men" (2 Pe 3:17). For there is a "spirit of error" (1 Jn 4:6), meaning religious error.

So, the Scriptures are beneficial for correction. We all need corrected by the Bible, especially our leaders. For they can lead or mislead many, not only themselves!

4. RIGHTEOUSNESS

"All Scripture is... profitable... for training in righteousness". This implies that we are unrighteous. Now, righteousness is the quality, state, or condition of being right or in the right, specifically in the sight of God. We all may not yet possess this quality in the measure in which we ought, so we need some training in righteousness.

We all have been unrighteous!

For example, concerning the whole world, God said, "There is none righteous, not even one" (Ro 3:10). So, God has declared that we all have not been righteous. We have not been in the condition of being right or in the right. And, "All unrighteousness is sin" (1 Jn 5:17). So, according to God, we all have sinned in some form of unrighteousness. "For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God" (Ro 3:23).

Therefore, the Scripture is beneficial for training us in righteousness, to teach us how not to sin! For the unrighteous (those who continue in sin) will not be saved (1 Cor 6:9; Re 21:7, 8). So, to be saved, not condemned by God, we need "training in righteousness" from the "Scripture". We need educated by the Scriptures to develop and form our thoughts and actions or behavior to be right in the sight of God.

5. GOODNESS

"All Scripture is... profitable... for every good work," that is, "that the man of God may be adequate, equipped for every good work". This implies that we are ill equipped to do good.

So, we need the Scriptures to outfit us to be good and do good. Indeed, since we all have lacked Godly knowledge, discipline, Scriptural accuracy, and

sinned in unrighteousness, we have been improperly trained to do good sufficiently. Because we all have not been good (in our character), we all have not done good in our actions. We have not done adequately good, or good in a satisfactory way.

Every one has not done good!

For example, concerning the whole world, God said, “there is none who does good, there is not even one” “together they have become useless” (Ro 3:12; Ps 14:3). Even more, the prophet said that our “righteous deeds” can still be “filthy” because of our “iniquities,” our sin (Isa 64:6). This is like conducting an event to raise money for charity, but getting intoxicated while doing so! This is not holy or good. The intoxication defiles the good work, as do other sins of like condemnable or reprobable nature. “Therefore, if anyone cleanses himself from these things, he will be a vessel for honor, sanctified, useful to the Master, prepared for every good work” (2 Tim 2:21). We must clean up our act so that any good work or deed we do is not defiled by our own sin!

So, the Scriptures can prepare us, making us “adequate, equipped for every good work,” especially in the sense of personal purity and character. It can change our bad, unholy, sensual nature and character to be like God’s good, holy, spiritual nature and character.

The benefits lead to goodness

Notice in our passage (2 Tim 3:16, 17) that the benefits of studying the Bible lead to one final thing, goodness, doing good. God wants us to do good (Eph 2:10; He 10:24). For God is good and does good. Now, consider how knowledge (that is, informing or teaching someone) can lead to reproof (his being disciplined by the Lord). Reproof can lead to correction (his overcoming his mistakes or deceptions). Correction can lead to righteousness (the condition of him being declared or found right, not wrong, in the sight of God, or not being condemned by him). Finally, righteousness can lead to a good outcome, goodness, that is good works or workings, not bad, defiled, or evil workings.

Notes: For how can a person be properly and fittingly reproofed and disciplined if he does not yet know over what he needs reproofed? He first needs informed or taught about it. He needs to know something. And how can one be corrected unless he is first reproofed for his wrong? A correction of one’s mistakes may not occur without reproof. And how can a person be in a condition of righteousness before the Lord unless he is first corrected of his errors? And how can one satisfactorily be and do good unless he is first in the condition of being declared righteous in God’s eyes or judgment?

Conclusion

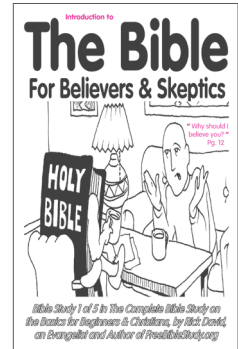
When we study the Bible, there are at least five key benefits which God wants us to receive. So, in this course on the Bible, let us seek to receive them. Let us expect to be taught some key knowledge about God, reproofed for any evil deeds we may be committing against his will, corrected from errors of interpreting his holy Scripture, trained in righteousness to cease from practicing unrighteousness (sin), and therefore be better equipped for good works, especially in our own personal character and nature.

Contents

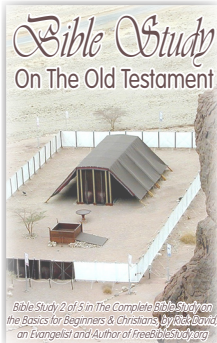
Advanced Chronological Study of the Holy Bible

1. Introduction to the Bible for Believers and Skeptics 11

- Why was the Bible written? **12**
- If the Bible were a person... **14**
- Is the Bible reliable? **16**
- Who wrote the Bible? **18**
- Which translation of the Bible should we use? **20**
- Why are other books not in the Bible? **22**
- Test on Introduction**



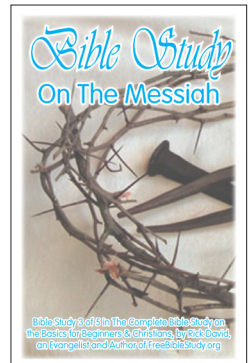
2. Bible Study on the Old Testament 23



- Bible Ages/Time Periods Explained **24**
- God planned to send the Messiah **26**
- God created heaven and earth to be very good **27**
- God started marriage between 1 man and 1 woman **28**
- Man: made advanced or primitive? **29**
- God has an enemy who tries to destroy everything good **30**
- God chose Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (i.e. Israel) **33**
- God delivered Israel **37**
- God gave Israel the Promised Land **42**
- Test on Old Testament**

3. Bible Study on the Messiah 47

- The Messiah was the seed of Abraham **48**
- Messianic Prophecy Fulfillment Chart **50**
- The Messiah was born of a virgin **51**
- John prepared the way for the Messiah **53**
- The Devil tempted the Messiah **55**
- The Messiah chose twelve apostles **57**



The Messiah preached the gospel with power **60**

The Messiah **D**ied, Was **B**uried, and **R**ose on the third day **65**

Go make disciples of Christ in all nations **69**

Test on Messiah

4. Bible Study on Salvation (Part 1) 71

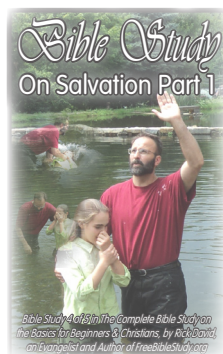
How Jesus said we must be saved **72**

How the apostles said we must be saved **74**

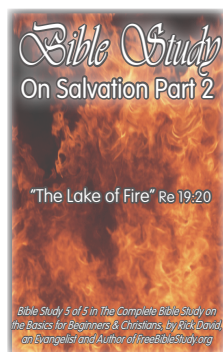
We can be saved by the grace [favor] of God,
"Saved by grace, through faith" (Eph 2:8) **81**

True Grace vs. False Grace Comparison Chart **88**

We can be saved by faith toward God, "Saved
by grace, through faith" (Eph 2:8) **89**



Test on Salvation 1



5. Bible Study on Salvation (Part 2) 95

We can be saved by repenting from dead works, "Repent... from dead works" (He 6:1) **96**

We can be saved by confessing Jesus is Lord and Christ, "If you confess with your mouth Jesus as Lord... you will be saved" (Ro 10:9) **112**

We can be saved by calling on the name of the Lord in water baptism, "Be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on His name" (Ac 22:16) **114**

We can be saved by continuing in God's grace, not His wrath! "Continue in His kindness [grace]; otherwise you also will be cut off [wrath]" (Ro 11:22) **117**

Test on Salvation 2

Review Test

Introduction to

The Bible

for Believers and Skeptics



Advanced Chronological Study of The Holy Bible
Containing The Old and New Testaments, Rick David
An Evangelist, Author of FreeBibleStudy.org

Why was the Bible written?

It was written to lead us to the Messiah!

For some very excellent and obvious reasons, the holy Scriptures were written to lead us to the Messiah. So when we think about the overall meaning and purpose or intent of the Bible (both the Old and the New Testaments), we must keep this foremost in our minds. For example:

The O.T. was written to prepare the Jews for the Messiah

The Old Testament, which contains 39 books, was written to be a temporary tutor, custodian, or schoolmaster to prepare, train, and lead those who used it to receive the Messiah, especially the Jews. For example, **"But before faith came [faith in Jesus as Christ], we [Jews] were kept in custody under the law [the O.T. Law of Moses], being shut up to the faith which was later to be revealed. Therefore the Law [of Moses] has become our tutor to lead us to Christ [the Messiah], so that we may be justified by faith. But now that faith has come [in Christ], we are no longer under a tutor [i.e. the O.T. Law of Moses]" (Ga 3:23-25). "For Christ is the end of the law [the O.T. Law of Moses] for righteousness to everyone who believes" (Ro 10:4).** So for the sake of being right and at peace with God, faith in Messiah, not in the "tutor," meaning Moses and his law, is what God now requires of His people.

Note: The word "Bible" literally means 'the books', it truly is a book of books, that is, sacred books.

What does Messiah mean?

1. The "Anointed One" (King)- In the Mosaic Age, the kings of Israel had oil poured on their heads to anoint them as kings, such as Saul, David, and Solomon (1 Sam 9:16; 15:1; 16:12, 13; 1 Ki 1:33,



34). But the Messiah was predicted to be different than these human kings. For example, He would be God's Son, and for this reason He would be called, "Immanuel" (Is 7:14), which means 'God with us'. His kingdom would extend from one generation to the next (Is 9:6, 7). He would have greater authority, not just over the Jews, but over all mankind (Is 49:6).

Incidentally, this was the charge against Jesus (Mt 27:37; Jn 19:18-22), and the reason why He was put to death--Messiah, the King--which Pilate had written on His cross in Hebrew [i.e. Messiah], Latin, and Greek [i.e. Christ]. He did not have oil poured on His head to anoint Him as a human king. Yet, the Father anointed Him with the oil of gladness (He 1:8, 9).

2. The Christ (Messiah) - When speaking of the same person, the Scriptures use both the word Messiah (Hebrew) and Christ (Greek). Some Bibles use these names interchangeably even within the same chapter, or they note Messiah means Christ, as in the NAS version of Mt 1:1, 18 and Jn 1:41; 4:25.

3. The Son of God (Deity) - The Scriptures equate the Messiah to the Son of God. Peter understood that Christ was God's Son. He called Him: **"the Christ, the Son of the living God"** (Mt 16:16). Even Jesus' enemy, Caiaphas, a Jewish high priest, equated the Christ to the Son of God. He asked Jesus, **"Are You the Christ, the Son of the Blessed One [God]?"** (Mk 14:61). It is understood and evident, then, that the Christ is God's Son. This fits perfectly with what Isaiah had said, that the Ruler, the King, would be a son (Is 7:14; 9:6), God's Son, and therefore, if God's Son, then Deity. This is why the Jews wanted to stone Him. By claiming to be the Son of God, it is then understood that He claimed to be Deity (SEE Jn 10:20-33). The Son of God is God, but He is not God the Father. Obviously, He is God the Son.

4. The Son of Man (Human) - Specifically, He's the son of David. For example, **"The record of the genealogy of Jesus the Messiah, the son of David"** (Mt 1:1). He became a human (Mt 22:42; Lk 18:31; He 2:5-9).

The N.T. was written to prove that Jesus is the Messiah

One gospel account testifies to this in its conclusion, saying, “**These have been written so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing you may have life in His name**” (Jn 20:31). So whatever was written in this account was written to help convince people that Jesus is the Messiah, and how this has something to do with receiving eternal life.

Now consider some of the evidence in the New Testament which proves that Jesus is the Christ. In it we find both (a) eyewitness testimony and (b) prophetic proof that Jesus is the Messiah. For example, angels testified to shepherds, saying, “**Today in the city of David [Bethlehem Lk 2:4] there has been born for you a Savior, who is Christ the Lord**” (Lk 2:11). John the Baptist, who was a great prophet (Lk 7:28), testified, saying, “**I myself have seen, and have testified that this is the Son of God**” (Jn 1:34). God the Father testified, saying, “**This is My beloved Son**” (Mt 17:5). Andrew, an apostle of Christ, testified to his brother Peter, saying, “**We have found the Messiah**” (Jn 1:41). And Peter, another apostle, when asked by Jesus who He was, said, “**You are the Christ, the Son of the living God**” (Mt 16:16). There are many others in the New Testament who testified that Jesus is the Messiah.

Now the most important *prophetic* proof in the New Testament about Jesus is this: In His short human life, He fulfilled all of the Old Testament prophecies about the Messiah. This would include all of the prophecies in the Law of Moses (e.g. De 18:15), the Prophets (Isa 53), and the Psalms (Ps 22:6-8, 11-18), especially the prophecies about His death for our sins, His burial, and His resurrection from the dead. Even Jesus said, “**‘Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things and to enter into His glory?’ Then beginning with [1] Moses and with [2] all the prophets, He explained to**

them the things concerning Himself in all the Scriptures” (Lk 24:26, 27). And, “**All things which are written about Me in [1] the Law of Moses and [2] the Prophets and [3] the Psalms must be fulfilled**” (Lk 24:44).

So, the New Testament confirms the fulfillment or the completion of the Old Testament prophecies about the Messiah, especially that He would suffer death on a cross for our sins, but then rise from the dead. This is the good news. This is the gospel. For example, Paul said, “**Now I make known to you, brethren, the gospel which I preached to you... by which you are also saved. That Christ died [D] for our sins according to the Scriptures [the O.I. prophecies], and that He was buried [B], and that He was raised [R] on the third day according to the Scriptures [the O.I. prophecies]**” (1 Cor 15:1-4). So the gospel is mainly all about the prophetic death, burial, and resurrection [the DBR] of the Messiah for our sins and what this should mean to us in regards to our salvation vs. condemnation.

Conclusion

The Old Testament, especially Moses' Law, was written to lead the Jews to the Messiah (Ga 3:23-25). The New Testament proves that Jesus is the Messiah (Jn 1:41). God wants all people everywhere to listen to Jesus Christ, so that they can be saved from their sins which they have committed against God and man. “**This is My beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased, listen to Him**” (Mt 17:5). Make no mistake; the Bible leads all mankind to Jesus Christ, both Jew and Gentile, young and old, male and female, sick and healthy, rich and poor... if they are willing. Are you willing to be led to the Messiah? Why was the Bible written?

If the Bible were a person...



If the Bible were a person, you could ask him questions and he would tell you what he thinks. Let's pretend the Bible is a real person and that you are going to ask him questions. The only way that he can answer you is by quoting from his own pages. In this way, he is telling you what he thinks. In this way you will know what is in him. Understand that the Bible is not afraid to tell you exactly what he really thinks. He will not hide anything from you. Here are questions that you might ask the Bible.

YOU ASK: Who wrote you?

BIBLE SAYS: "Know this first of all, that no prophecy of Scripture is a matter of one's own interpretation, for no prophecy was ever made by an act of human will, but men moved by the Holy Spirit spoke from God" (2 Pe 1:20, 21). "The gospel which was preached by me is not according to man. For I neither received it from man, nor was I taught it" (Ga 1:11, 12).

YOU ASK: Why should I believe you?

BIBLE SAYS: "These have been written that you may believe... and that believing you may have life" (Jn 20:31). "All the utterances of my mouth are in righteousness; There is nothing crooked or perverted in them" (Pr 8:8).

YOU ASK: Why have you been around so long?

BIBLE SAYS: "My words... shall not depart... from now and forevermore" (Is 59:21). "Until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass away" (Mt 5:18).

YOU ASK: Are you a myth?

BIBLE SAYS: "We did not follow cleverly devised tales when we made known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but we were eyewitnesses of His majesty" (2 Pe 1:16-18).

YOU ASK: Are you a dead letter that was written only for people long ago?

BIBLE SAYS: "The word of God is living and active and sharper than any two edged sword, and piercing as far as the division of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart" (He 4:12). "For the promise [forgiveness of sin and the gift of the Holy Spirit] is for you and your children, and for all who are far off" (Ac 2:39).

YOU ASK: Why do so many phony people teach the Bible?

BIBLE SAYS: "A pretext for greed... seek glory from men, either from you or from others" (1 Thess 2:5, 6).

YOU ASK: Why do religious people not always do what the Bible says to do?

BIBLE SAYS: "For the sake of... tradition. IN VAIN DO THEY WORSHIP... TEACHING AS DOCTRINES THE PRECEPTS OF MEN" (Mt 15:6, 9).

YOU ASK: How can you help me?

BIBLE SAYS: "To know wisdom" (Pr

1:2). "All Scripture is... profitable for teaching... that the man of God may be adequate, equipped for every good work" (2 Tim 3:16, 17). "The word implanted... is able to save your souls" (Ja 1:21). "With most of them [the Jews], God was not well pleased; for they were laid low in the wilderness. Now these things happened as examples for us, that we should not crave evil things, as they also craved... and they were written for our instruction" (1 Cor 10:5-6, 11).

YOU ASK: Why are no other books included in your Bible?

BIBLE SAYS: "I felt the necessity to write to you appealing that you contend earnestly for the faith which was once for all delivered" (Jude 3). "Even though we [an apostle, preacher, teacher, evangelist, or prophet], or an angel [e.g. so called 'Moroni'] from heaven, should preach to you a gospel contrary to that which we have preached to you, let him be accursed... I say again... let him be accursed" (Ga 1:6-9). "I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: if anyone adds to them, God shall add to him the plagues which are written in this book; and if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part from the tree of life and from the holy city, which are written in this book" (Re 22:18, 19).

YOU ASK: People say you contradict yourself and are inconsistent. Is this true?

BIBLE SAYS: "The untaught and the unstable distort... the Scriptures" (2 Pe 3:16). "Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a workman who does not need to be ashamed and who correctly handles the word of truth" (2 Tim 2:15 NIV).

YOU ASK: Do you think God really can see me?

BIBLE SAYS: "There is no creature hidden from His sight, but all things are open and laid bare to the eyes of Him with whom we have to do" (He 4:13).

YOU ASK: How can I get God's help in my life?

BIBLE SAYS: "To this one I will look, to him who is humble and contrite of spirit, and who trembles at My word" (Is 66:2). "He may strongly support those whose heart is completely His" (2 Chron 16:9). "If anyone serves Me [the Son], the Father will honor him" (Jn 12:26).

YOU ASK: Do you think God really loves me and wants me to live?

BIBLE SAYS: "God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believes in Him should not perish, but have eternal life" (Jn 3:16).

YOU ASK: What's the best way to study the Bible?

BIBLE SAYS: "Meditation all the day." (Ps 119:97) "Blessed is the man who does not walk in the counsel of the wicked... But his delight is in the law of the Lord, and in His law he meditates day and night" (Ps 1:1, 2).

YOU ASK: What great things can I do for God?

BIBLE SAYS: "They said therefore to Him, 'What shall we do, that we may work the works of God?' Jesus answered and said to them, 'This is the work of God, that you believe in Him whom He has sent' " (Jn 6:28, 29).

Whom did God send? Do you believe in Him?

Is the Bible reliable?

The Original Manuscripts

Ancient books, like the Bible, typically or totally do not have any surviving original manuscripts. Below, as you will see in a list of ancient books, only varying quantities of ancient copies of them exist. So then there are no known original manuscripts of any of the books of the Bible. All we have are ancient copies of the originals, likewise for any other ancient book. Why have the original manuscripts perished? It is understood that the original material on which they were written, such as scrolls, degraded and deteriorated with use, light, and moisture. So they needed recopied, and after they were copied, the originals were destroyed by the copyists.

Yet one thing we know for sure is that the Good News message within the Bible is more important than the technicalities of how we actually got a copy of it. For example, the Bible says, "**Faith comes from hearing, and hearing by the word of Christ**" (Ro 10:17). This verse teaches that a person can learn to trust God by listening to the story of Jesus Christ, and not primarily by studying historical evidence or lack thereof. Faith comes by hearing the story of Jesus Christ, not by seeing (Ro 10:17). After reading the Bible for yourself, then by faith you may begin to trust that the Bible is from God. It is the *message* in it that convicts and convinces people that the Bible is true, reliable, and trustworthy. Belief in the Son of God does not come by any other means than by hearing the message of Him.

Ancient Copy & Textual Proofs

Compared to any other ancient book, the Bible is by far, overwhelmingly, and beyond a doubt, the best supported with (a) ancient copies and the best preserved (b) textually. For example, compare the total surviving copies, not originals, of various ancient books with the Bible.

AUTHOR	# OF EXTANT COPIES
Caesar <i>Galic Wars</i>	10 copies
Livy <i>Roman History</i>	20 copies
Tacitus <i>Annals</i>	20 copies
Pliny Secundus <i>History</i>	7 copies
Thucydides <i>History</i>	8 copies
Suetonius <i>de Vita Caesarum</i>	8 copies
Herodotus <i>History</i>	8 copies
Lucretius	2 copies
Catullus	3 copies
Euripides	9 copies
Sophocles	193 copies
Demosthenes	200 copies (all from 1 copy)
Aristotle	49 copies (of any 1 work)
Aristophanes	10 copies

Professor Metzger reports, "In the entire range of ancient Greek and Latin literature, the ILIAD ranks next to the New Testament in possessing the greatest amount of manuscript testimony." [(Metzger, 144) Metzger, Bruce M., Chapters in the History of the N.T. Textual Criticism, Grand Rapids MI, Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1963]

How many extant [existing] copies are there from Homer's ILIAD? There are 643 copies. That is a remarkable figure. It results partly from the Greeks' esteem for the ILIAD, which they regarded as holy. Now consider the even more amazing number of ancient copies available for the New Testament, the gospel of Jesus Christ: over 5,000 Greek copies; over 10,000 copies in Latin; over 4,000 copies in Slavic; over 2,000 copies in Ethiopic; over 2,000 copies in Armenian; over 350 copies in Syriac; etc.

Note: Others authorities list these numbers even higher, such as in the Kurzgefasste Liste der griechischen Handschriften des Neuen Testaments (1994), edited by Kurt and Barbara Aland.

Sir Frederick G. Kenyon of the British Museum said, "Scholars are satisfied that they possess substantially the true text of the principal Greek and Roman writers whose works have come down to us, of Sophocles, of Thucydides, of Cicero, of Virgil; yet our knowledge of their writings depends on a mere handful of manuscripts, whereas the manuscripts of the New Testament are counted by the hundreds and even thousands." And, "No other ancient book has anything like such early and plentiful testimony to its text, and no unbiased scholar would deny that the text that has come down to us is substantially sound." [(Kenyon, 20) *The Bible and Modern Scholarship*, London: J. Murray, 1940]; [(Kenyan, 23) Kenyan, Frederick, *Our Bible and the Ancient Manuscripts*, 4th ed. London: Eyre and Spottiswoode, 1939]

Now compare the "Textual Integrity" of the Bible to other ancient books. "This discussion [about the reliability of the N.T.] cannot be fully appreciated unless it is contrasted with the textual integrity of other books from the ancient world. For example, only 40 lines (or 400 words) of the New Testament are in doubt whereas 764 lines of the *ILIAD* are questioned. This five percent textual corruption compares with one-half of one percent of similar emendations in the New Testament. In the national epic of India, the *Mahabharata*, some 26,000 lines are textual corruptions (10 percent). The New Testament, then, has not only survived in more manuscripts than any other book from antiquity, but it has survived in a purer form than any other great book—a form that is 99.5 percent pure." [(Geisler, 366-367). Geisler, Norman L. and William E. Nix, *A General Introduction to the Bible*, Chicago: Moody, 1986 (latest edition 1986)]

Therefore, we can be sure that even though we do not have the original manuscripts (evidently no ancient book does), we do have reliable and remarkably accurate copies which were made from them.

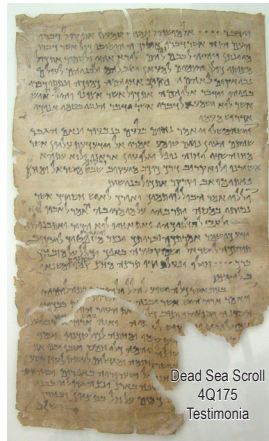
Ancient Versions Testify to Its Accuracy

Many Bibles are translated into modern day languages from the earliest copies of the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek Bibles. For e.g.

1. The Septuagint [It is a Greek O.T. from 250 B.C.]
2. The Codex Sinaiticus [Greek O.T. & N.T. from 400 A.D.]
3. The Codex Vaticanus [from 340 A.D.]
4. Fragments of the N.T. [just beyond 100 A.D.]
5. The Dead Sea Scrolls [further mentioned below]

The *Dead Sea Scrolls* are a very remarkable copy of the Old Testament. They were discovered in 1947, supposedly, by an Arab shepherd boy who threw a stone into a hillside cave (a Qumran cave) near the Dead Sea in the Middle East, and heard

what sounded like the breaking of pottery. He went into the cave and found pottery jars which contained carefully wrapped scrolls. More than one third of these scrolls are books of the O.T. They are considered to be at least 1,000 years older than the earliest known O.T. Hebrew copies that the Jews use to translate from (such as *The Cairo Codex* 895 A.D. and *The Leningrad Codex*



of the Prophets 916 A.D.). So these scrolls beat the oldest Hebrew copies by 1,000 years! This is amazing. Even more remarkable, these scrolls were hidden for over 2,000 years. This is an stunning discovery! One of the best preserved scrolls is the *Isaiah scroll* from the O.T. It's estimated to be second century B.C. It agrees in almost every respect with other traditional Hebrew texts, like the ones used in translating the King James Version. The *Isaiah Scroll* "proved to be word for word identical with our standard Hebrew Bible in more than 95% of the text. The 5% variation consisted chiefly of obvious slips of the pen and variations in spelling." [(Archer, 19). Gleason Archer, *A Survey of the Old Testament Introduction*, Chicago: Moody, 1977] So this proves, by 1,000 years or more, that the copy making process was very reliable. Now because the *Dead Sea Scroll* book of *Isaiah* almost entirely matches other more current copies, we have much more confidence in the copy making process used by scribes over the centuries. These scrolls are an ancient testimony to the accuracy of today's Bibles.

Who wrote the Bible?

It was written by the Holy Spirit

First and foremost, the whole Bible was written by the Holy Spirit, meaning God. For example: **"But know this first of all, that no prophecy of Scripture is... one's own interpretation, for no prophecy was ever made by an act of human will, but men moved by the Holy Spirit spoke from God" (2 Pe 1:20, 21).** So the Bible is not an interpretation of men, but instead a revelation of God's will through men. That is why we consider it inspired by God.

The Old Testament

God inspired the Old Testament. Even His own finger wrote ten very important commandments on two tablets of stone and He gave them to Moses to give to the people (Ex 31:18; De 9:10). Then God led Moses to write some of the first five books of the Old Testament, if not all five. These are called the Law, or the Law of Moses because he is the one who received it from God to write it down and pass it on to the Jewish people (Ex 24:4; 31:18; 32:19, 34:1, 27, 28).



Note: In many verses, the New Testament refers to the Law of Moses when it teaches that it is not in effect any more because Jesus Christ fulfilled or completed it (SEE Mt 5:17; Col 2:14; Ro 8:3, 4; Ro 10:4; Ac 15).

Several other inspired men wrote the rest of the Old Testament. For example, Solomon wrote most of the book of Proverbs, the Song of Solomon, and Ecclesiastes (Pr 1:1; Ec 1:1; Sol 1:1). King David wrote most of the book of Psalms, which were songs about his joys, sorrows, and needs. He also spoke of the Christ in them (Ps 2:7; Ps 22). Several other prophets spoke words from God that were written down; men such as Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Ezekiel. King David was also called a prophet (Ac 2:29, 30; 2 Sa 23:1, 2). Others contributed to the writings. The Jews were the keepers and collectors of these Old Testament writings. All of them have been copied and translated over the years and delivered to us today.

The New Testament

Evidently or traditionally, the 27 books in the New Testament were written by eight inspired men; seven were Jews, but Luke supposedly was a Gentile.

1. Paul (a tent-maker) wrote 14 books
2. John (a fisherman) 5 books
3. Luke (a physician) 2 books
4. Peter (a fisherman) 2 books
5. Matthew [Levi] (a tax-collector) 1 book
6. James (a carpenter) 1 book
7. Mark (unknown) 1 book
8. Jude (a carpenter) 1 book

These books were written between 33 A.D. and 120 A.D. in the Greek language of that day, and were circulated amongst Christian churches. For example, Paul said, **"When this letter is read among you,**

have it also read in the church of the Laodiceans" (Col 4:16). In his first letter to Timothy, in 5:18, Paul quotes from Matthew or Luke (Mt 10:10; Lk 10:7). So evidently Matthew's and/or Luke's Gospel account must have been circulated during the first century.

The credibility of the New Testament writers

Four were apostles of Christ

The apostles were chosen by the Messiah Himself to be eyewitness companions of His majesty when He was on the earth (Lk 6:13; Mk 3:14; 1 Cor 12:28; 2 Cor 12:12). In this way, they could be the best witnesses to credibly tell others about the Lord. Matthew, John, and Peter were apostles in that sense. Paul also was chosen by the Messiah to be an apostle (1 Tim 2:7). Yet Paul only saw Jesus in a vision (Ac 9:1-7). But the Lord used Paul mightily to spread the gospel, perhaps equally or even in greater measure than some of the other apostles. He wrote 14 out of 27 books, over half of the New Testament.



Peter wrote a New Testament book by Silvanus' handwriting (1 Pe 5:12)

Two were traveling companions of an apostle of Christ

Of the men who went with Paul on his evangelistic journeys, two of them wrote New Testament books; Mark (Ac 12:25), also called John [not John the apostle], and Luke, the beloved physician. Now Luke, when writing the book of Acts, sometimes used the word "we" to indicate that he was with Paul (Ac 16:10; 27:2, 37). Both Mark and Luke would have understood first hand from this apostle what the new message was all about.

Traditionally, two were relatives of Jesus Christ, His brothers

The Messiah had brothers who, at some point, were followers of Him, James and Jude (Mk 6:3; Ac 1:14; Ga 1:19). Therefore, they would be credible witnesses and writers of their New Testament books. In A.D. 397, the Council of Carthage gave their formal acceptance of the 27 books in the New Testament, books that were already being used by the churches as the standard of Christian faith.

Conclusion

Even though both testaments were written by several inspired men from different ages, each book of both the Old and New Testaments fits together like a finished puzzle. They are woven together like one multi colored cloth, showing forth a unified picture of past, present, and future, especially in regards to the Messiah. This inspires our awe and wonder.

Which translation of the Bible should we use?

There are two main categories, kinds or styles of Bibles

Why are there so many versions today? Are all versions reliable? Truly, there are only two kinds of translations. For example, some are a direct quote from the early copies. These are called "literal translations" or "word for word", meaning they directly quote every word God said. **Others do not directly quote what God actually said, but instead give an interpretation**, explanation, amplification, paraphrase, restatement, or suppression of the words He actually used or spoke. These Bibles are truly an "interpretation", not a translation, of the word of God. This always adds too and takes away from the words of God. Below are some examples of both kinds of Bibles.

A. Literal Bibles (Direct Quote)

- . New American Standard (used for this study)
- . King James, New King James
- . New English Standard, Etc.

B. Interpretations (Not a Direct Quote)

- . Amplified & Commentary Bibles
- . Simplified Bibles
- . Gender-Neutral Bibles, Etc.

Note: The purpose of the lists is to give you a basic and fundamental sense of the two main styles of Bibles, not to present a complete or comprehensive list of Bibles for each category. You must do your own homework. Even more, beware! Some Bibles, like the Revised Standard Version (RSV), were complete literal translations when first introduced. But their successors/replacements are not. For example, the New Revised Standard Version (NRSV), is not a complete literal version. Instead it is a so called "gender-neutral" Bible. As explained on the next page, Gender-neutral Bibles are worse than a paraphrase because they do not translate masculine words, and instead replace them with no-gender replacements. Therefore they are not gender-neutral, but instead are truly "feminine-favored" or "pervert-preferred" Bibles. These translators despise the masculine gender. They refuse to even translate it! Shocking!

How to tell the difference between the two

(A) What is the stated intent of the translators? At the front, many Bibles include the goals of the translators or commissioning group. Some say that their Bible is an "Amplified Bible." This means that they are explaining it or interpreting it in addition to or in place of translating it. Others say their purpose was to stick to the original text, word for word, as closely as possible and if possible. So read about the goals and intent of the translators.

(B) What is their un-stated intent? People have differing belief systems which may or may not influence their translation work. So, if you can, consider their affiliations or beliefs. Because of the mistaken belief of certain translators, some Bibles have more of a bias than others which changes the original meaning of certain passages. For example:

The New World Translation

This Bible was translated by the sect called the "Jehovah's Witnesses." They mistakenly believe that the Son of God is not Deity, and for this reason they do not worship Him. They do not understand how the Son of God can also be God, like His Father. So because of their mistaken belief, they have intentionally mis-translated certain passages to hide, remove, and suppress the true Deity of God's Son. For example, (a) In John 1:1, most Bibles reveal that God's Son "**was God**", with a capital 'G'. But the New World Translation says, "was a god", with a little 'g' and with an added 'a'. This non-capitalization indicates that they do not believe in Jesus' Deity, but instead believe that He is a creature whom God created.

(b) In Hebrews 1:8, most Bibles reveal that God the Father talks about His Son being God, saying, "**But about the Son He** [the Father] **says, Thy throne, O God** [Son], **will last for ever and ever**". But the Jehovah's Witnesses' Bible has restated that verse in such a way as to hide or remove the Deity that the Father Himself has attributed to His own Son. For this reason, the Jehovah's Witness *New World Translation* should be avoided altogether, because it misrepresents the main character in the Bible, God's Son, Jesus Christ.

Note: In my Bible Study on the Divine Regulations of Christian Worship, I prove the Deity of Jesus Christ with many Scriptures, and I answer the main objections of the Jehovah's Witnesses.

Gender Neutral Bibles

[A.K.A. Gender-Bender or Masculine Emasculated Bibles!]

Another obvious example of a biased, and also a non-literal, Bible is what is deceptively called a "Gender Neutral" Bible. In the 1990's, publishers, translators, and religious groups first began to make these kinds of Bibles. They should instead be called "masculine neutered" or "emasculated" Bibles, since they remove the male gender from almost all passages, excepting for now most passages about the Father and the Son (which are masculine terms). Why do they do this? It is because certain worshipers want a genderless God, a genderless religion. Some do not want to offend the female gender, the feminists or the world, since some of these people do not want a masculine deity. If these false worshipers get their way entirely, they will take away the gender of our Father, our Son, and the Holy Spirit, whom the Scriptures call a "**He**" (**Jn 14:26**). So these are "pervert preferred" Bibles or "feminine favored" Bibles.

The New Revised Standard Version (NRSV), is a masculine neutered, gender-bender Bible. This version, and others like it, of which there are several (like the NIV-I, with "I" meaning "inclusive", yet we know that it truly is "exclusive"), these should be avoided altogether since they do not translate male terms. You cannot trust the thousands and thousands of pronouns in these Bibles. Some even mistranslate gender specific prophecies in the Old Testament about the Son of man, the Christ, blurring or blotting out the meaning altogether. The specific problems which these Bibles introduce are detailed in *The Bible Study on True Worshipers*, "for Such People the Father Seeks to Be His Worshipers" (**Jn 4:23**). 21

Conclusion

Some Bibles accurately communicate the very words that God spoke, and some do not. The ones which add more words or meaning to the passages, explaining them in greater detail than what is in the early copies, or restating whole sentences or thoughts, are interpretations, not translations. They reflect more of what men think, not what God actually said. They are not directly quoting God's words, and are at best paraphrases. Yet they typically suppress or add to the word of God by this style of 'translation'. They should not be used, for example, as a legal document, will, or testament because of the additions and subtractions of the translators (no legal document, such as a person's will, should be added to or paraphrased, or restated in different words or thoughts, especially God's will).

Any Bible, whether it's a word for word translation or one that is an interpretation, can put footnotes and commentaries from men near the words of God. Therefore, these notes and commentaries need to be carefully tested as to whether they have any merit or value. It seems that the best Bible to have and use is one that is understandable to the reader, and accurately translated; a word for word translation (a literal translation, one that actually quotes the word of God). A more accurate faith of the one reading it. If you want to be a stable follower of God, then you must be aware of the pitfalls of certain Bibles, especially the one(s) which misrepresent who Jesus is or His gospel. Is the Bible reliable? Yes, by far it is reliable. But some translations are obviously better than others.

Note: The Book of Mormon is not even in the same class as the Bible because it is not the Bible. It is a totally different story which was fabricated and composed by Joseph Smith in 1830. He claimed to use a seer stone to create it. He was a sorcerer. This book is utterly false.

Why are other books not in the Bible?

There are at least three excellent reasons why other writings are not included and should not be included in the holy Scriptures, the Bible.

1. They are not truly inspired by God

Most importantly, other writings are not considered to be God-breathed. So they are not from God, they are from the minds of men. God did not move anybody by the Holy Spirit to write them. Therefore, they are truly not prophetic. For example, several books appeared between the period of both the Old and New Testaments. These have been grouped into what's called the "Apocrypha" [meaning obscure or hidden books, that is, hidden or unseen by their absence, or uncommon use by God's Covenant People, the Jews]. The Apocrypha has been widely disputed as to whether it is inspired or not. The Catholic Bible includes some of these books as part of their Old Testament. But most any other Bible does not, including strictly Jewish Old Testaments.

2. We have been given the final message

Resoundingly, in the first century A.D., the final message about Jesus Christ was already given to us, and to the world, once and for all. For example, "Contend earnestly for the faith which was once for all handed down to the saints" (Jude 3). Therefore, the good news about Jesus Christ, the gospel, is the only message for which we Christians should contend.

3. We have been sternly warned not to add words

Finally, warnings of the severest punishment await those who add to or take away from the previously established message of Christ. For example, Paul, an apostle of Christ, said, "I am amazed that you are so quickly deserting Him who called you by the grace of Christ, for a different gospel; which is really not another; only there are some who are disturbing you and want to distort the gospel of Christ. But even if we, or an angel from heaven, should preach to you a gospel contrary to what we have preached to you, he is to be accursed! As we have said before, so I say again now, if any man is preaching to you a gospel contrary to what you received, he is to be accursed!" (Ga 1:6-9).

Note: As stated above, even "an angel from heaven" who brings "another" testament is cursed by the gospel. This would include the so called angel "Moroni", after whom the Mormon church and book is named, and who brought, as their book title says, "Another Testament" of Jesus Christ to Joseph Smith.

Jesus said, "I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: if anyone adds to them, God will add to him the plagues which are written in this book and if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God will take away his part from the tree of life and from the holy city, which are written in this book" (Re 22:18, 19). So anyone who gets creative with the word of God or suppresses it will be condemned to the hellfire.

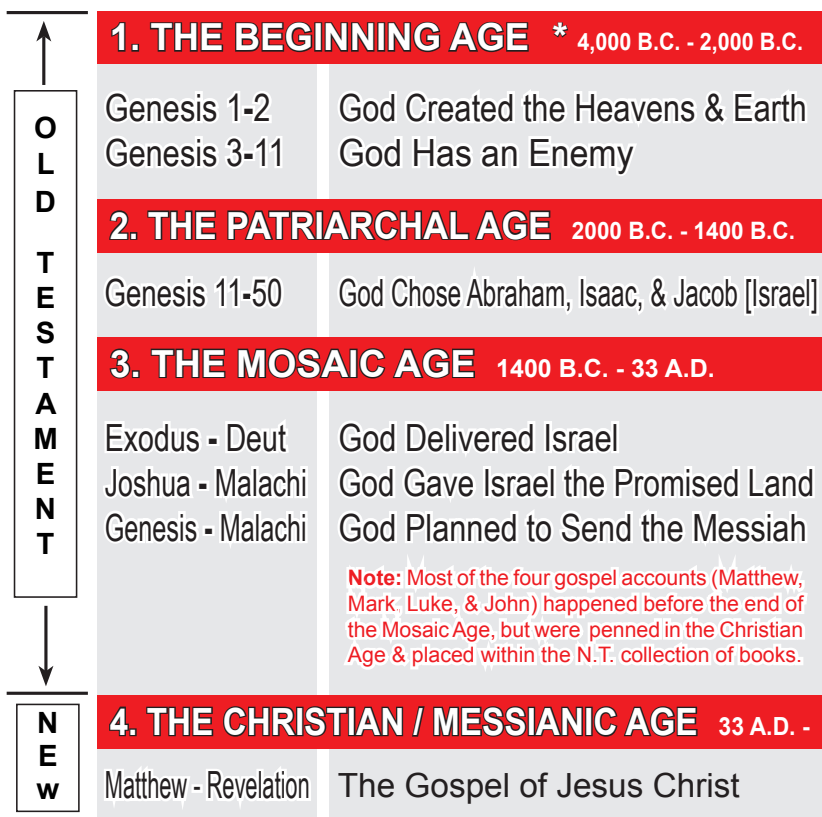
Now Complete the
TEST on the Introduction

Bible Study On The Old Testament



Advanced Chronological Study of The Holy Bible
Containing The Old and New Testaments, Rick David,
An Evangelist and Author of FreeBibleStudy.org

Bible Ages / Time Periods Explained



* Note: The years listed above are approximate, not exact. It is difficult to accurately measure ancient time beyond a certain point in history; records are hard to find, specifically before the Mosaic Age. So these time periods will differ based on varying methods students of the Bible use to calculate them. For convincing truths on the actual age of creation, please read "Notes on Age of Creation" at end of this lesson.

The Bible is an inspired history book

In certain ways, and in some detail, the Bible is an inspired history book of the world, from its beginning until its end. And so it can be divided into different historical or chronological ages, or as the word of God says, "**times or epochs which the Father has fixed by His own authority**" (Ac 1:7). These Bible ages [epochs] are broad based time periods which

also have certain commandments or covenants which God gave to mankind. Some call these things "dispensations", meaning how God worked with man and what He expected of him during a specific age, time period, or holy covenant. So we begin to study the Bible chronologically, in the sequence of how things happened historically. In this way you will know how things fit in their proper places within the Bible. To properly understand the word of God, it is very important to understand Bible Ages.

There are at least four historical Bible ages

First, The Beginning Age. It lasted about 2,000 years. Its major themes are the creation of the world and the introduction of sin into it with its consequences. Next, The Patriarchal Age. It lasted approximately 600 years. Its major theme is centered on Abraham, his son, grandsons, and great grandsons. Third, The Mosaic Age. It lasted about 1,433 years. Its major themes are the deliverance of Abraham's descendants, the Jews, from slavery to Egypt, the giving of the Law, and their movement into the Promised Land. Finally, The Messianic or Christian Age. It is the historical period in which we live today. Its major theme is the death, burial, and resurrection of Jesus Christ for our sins (SEE 1 Cor 15:1-5). We do not know how long it will last on earth (Mt 24:36). But some form of it will last forever in heaven.

Old Testament Ages

The first book in the Old Testament, Genesis, covers two ages, The Beginning Age and The Patriarchal Age. Combined, they lasted about 2,600 years. The rest of the Old Testament, Exodus through Malachi, covers one age, The Mosaic Age. It lasted about 1,400 years.

Note: Please keep in mind that since the Mosaic Age did not end until Christ shed His blood (SEE Lk 22:20), that almost all of the four gospel accounts (Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John) are technically a part of the Mosaic Age, even though they were written during the Christian Age and placed within the New Testament collection of books.

The whole Old Testament spanned three ages, The Beginning Age, The Patriarchal Age, and The Mosaic Age. Combined, they cover about 4,000 years. Old Testament time is marked by the abbreviation B.C. It means "before Christ". According to the Bible, man has only existed from about 4,000 B.C.

New Testament Ages

The first four books of the New Testament cover two ages, The Fulfillment of The Mosaic Age or Covenant and The Beginning of The Christian Age or Covenant. The Mosaic Age continued to be in effect even while the Messiah was on the earth; up until approximately 33 A.D. It was at His death that The Mosaic Age ended and The Christian Age began. The Messiah lived on the earth for approximately 33 years. New Testament time is marked by the abbreviation A.D., which is Latin for "Year of our Lord Jesus Christ".

Regulations / Covenants in the Ages

The Beginning Age had some instructions for man (SEE Ge 1:28; 2:15-17). The Patriarchal Age had a covenant with one person (Ge 17:1-27). The Mosaic Age had a new covenant with one nation started with blood (He 9:18). The Messianic Age has a new covenant with all nations started with blood (Lk 22:20).

Notes on Age of Creation

There are some important details in the entire range of Scripture which help one to carefully estimate the actual age of the earth since creation, that is when God actually started to create day and night, land and sea, heaven and earth, from the six days of creation. For example: (a) In the New Testament, Luke carefully listed the genealogy of Jesus Christ all the way back to the first man, Adam. So, there has only been a certain amount of generations, a limited amount, from Adam, who was created on Day 6, to Christ. (b) The book of Genesis records the very first generations of men, including their actual age when they died. So we know how long they lived from Adam on up to a certain generation, such as Noah, who died after the great flood. Indeed, the ages of certain generations of men were recorded even up to and beyond Abraham. Likewise, God specifically said how long it would be before Abraham's descendants would receive the Promised Land. For example, they first had to be slaves for four hundred years in Egypt (Ge 15:13). And so we know that the Patriarchal Age lasted 600 years (200 years in Canaan, and then 400 years in slavery in Egypt). (c) There are plentiful historical records from the time of Christ to today. So no one disputes this time period. Likewise, there are many historical records of the Mosaic Age. For example just think of the Pharaohs and the land of ancient Egypt and the land of Israel. There are even some records from the time of the patriarchs, like Abraham. And beyond that records are hard to find. This is why the inspired account of creation, as written in the book of Genesis, and the associated enumerated generations of men after that, along with Luke's genealogical account of Christ back to Adam, are so very important to calculating ancient time beyond Moses and Abraham. In conclusion, it is not unreasonable to say that, based on all of these things (the inspired truths in the Scripture and the abundance of historical evidence), that the earth from creation to today (2012), is estimated to be 6,000 + years old. Indeed, because of these revealed things, it cannot be otherwise. For God did not create land until day 3 of creation, nor the sun and moon until day 4. And so on and so forth. And in connection with this we know that Luke only lists a certain amount of direct descendants of Christ all the way back to Day 6, when Adam was created. So all things are that new! This would include both man and land.

God planned to send the Messiah



He was prophesied in every age

From the beginning of creation and throughout the Old Testament, for about 4,000 years, God foretold that He would send the Messiah into the world to save it. There is Messianic prophecy in every age in the Bible. For example:

The Beginning Age

God spoke mysteriously, yet indicatively of the Messiah when he told Satan: "I will put enmity [ill feelings] between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed; He shall bruise you on the head, And you shall bruise him on the heel" (Ge 3:15). "He", the Messiah, and Satan would have ill feelings between each other, as would their followers.

The Patriarchal Age

Still somewhat mysterious, and yet indicative again, God promised that the Messiah would be an offspring of Abraham. For example, God said to Abraham, "In your seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because you have obeyed My voice" (Ge 22:18). Not only the Jewish nation, but all nations would be blessed by the seed, a descendant of Abraham: the Messiah (READ Gal 3:16).

The Mosaic Age

This age contained a lot of details about the Messiah. In it, we are told who, what, when, where, why, and how He would be sent into the world. For example:

1. Who is the Messiah?

He would be Moses-like; a miracle worker, a prophet, a covenant-bearer (De 18:15; Ac 3:22, 23). He would be Immanuel, which means God with us (Is 7:14). He would be God's Son whom kings of the earth should worship (Ps 2:7-12). He would be a son given to us (Is 7:14, 9:6).

2. What is His purpose? Why would He be sent?

He would be the answer to the Jews' request for someone to speak the words of God to them (De 18:15-19). He would be an everlasting ruler over God's people (Is 9:7). He would not be held by death, but resurrected (Ps 16:10). He would be rejected by the Jews, suffer terribly, and become mankind's sin-bearer (Is 53). He would be betrayed by a close friend (Ps 41:9). He would be cut off (Da 9:26).

3. When would He enter the world?

He would arrive sometime after the Jews' Babylonian exile, after Jerusalem would be rebuilt (Da 9:20-25).

4. Where would He enter the world?

He would go forth from Bethlehem (Mic 5:2). He would shine as a great light by Galilee (Is 9:1,2). He would have to be called out of Egypt (Hos 11:1). He would come to Jerusalem on the colt of a donkey (Zec 9:9).

5. How would He enter the world?

26 He would be born of a virgin (Is 7:14).

God created heaven and earth to be very good!

THE BEGINNING AGE [4,000 B.C. to 2,000 B.C.] Genesis chpts. 1-11

"God saw all that He had made, and behold, it was **very good**" (Ge 1:31).

The Origin of Heaven & Earth

"In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth" (Ge 1:1). He **spoke** them into being out of nothing (He 11:3). For example:

DAY 1 - THE 24 hr. LIGHT / DARK SYSTEM

"God **said**, 'Let there be light; and there was light.' God saw that the light was good; and God separated the light from the darkness. God called the light **day**, and the darkness he called **night**. And there was evening and there was morning, **one day**" (Ge 1:3-5).

DAY 2 - HEAVEN

"Then God said, 'Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters'... and it was so' (Ge 1:6, 7). "God called the expanse heaven. And there was evening and there was morning, a second day" (Ge 1:6, 8).

DAY 3 - LAND, SEA, VEGETATION

"Then God said, 'Let the waters below the heavens be gathered into one place, and let the dry land appear'; and it was so' (Ge 1:9). "Then God said, 'Let the earth sprout vegetation'... and it was so. There was evening and there was morning, a third day" (Ge 1:11, 13).

DAY 4 - SUN, MOON, STARS

"Then God said, 'Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens... for signs, and for seasons, and for days and years... to give light on the earth.'; and it was so. There was evening and there was morning, a fourth day" (Ge 1:14, 15, 19).

DAY 5 - SEA CREATURES & BIRDS

God spoke into being all creatures in the waters and in the air (Ge 1:20-23). "And there was evening and there was morning, a fifth day" (Ge 1:23).

DAY 6 - LAND CREATURES [Including Man]

"Then God said, 'Let the earth bring forth living creatures after their kind; cattle and creeping things and beasts of the earth after their kind'; and it was so' (Ge 1:24). "God said, 'Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness; and let them rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over the cattle and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.' God created man in His own image, in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them" (Ge 1:26, 27).

Note: On Day 6, God spoke of Himself as an "Us" and an "Our". These are plural, not singular words. They begin to reveal the three separate and distinct persons of God, namely God the Father (one person), God the Son (another person), and God the Holy Spirit (another person). There is a detailed lesson about the plurality of God in *The Bible Study on the Regulations of Divine Worship*, specifically the lesson called "Beloved, Understand Whom We Worship."

Notes: Before creating anything else, God first created the 24 hour day/night system. He did this by creating light, naming it "day". Then He separated that light, the day, from the darkness, which He Himself called "night". So He made day and night, "one day". It is the reason why He created light and darkness, to make a day out of it. Genesis summarizes and defines this day and night cycle as an evening and a morning, 1 day, not 1,000 days. These Bible truths clearly bear witness to a literal 6 days of creation, not 6,000 years of it or another sum. Even more, notice that for each of the 6 days of creation, the Bible specifically counts the days for us (it does the math for us, lest we come to the wrong conclusion), saying that there was evening and there was morning, a second day; evening and morning, a third day, etc. "Thus the heavens and the earth were completed, and all their hosts. By the seventh day God completed His work which He had done, and He rested on the seventh day" (Ge 2:1, 2). Indeed, in the Mosaic Age, this is exactly how the Jews were to understand and practice it by keeping the Sabbath every literal seven days. Furthermore, what God completed did not need to evolve. With God, there is no such thing as evolution. There are reproductions and strains, but no evolution. For the theory of evolution is fundamentally opposed to the creation account in the holy Scriptures. For example, evolution does not confess God as Creator. Evolution does not believe in God. It is the unbelievers version of how we got here. Therefore, evolution does not believe man was made in God's image, but in the image of an ape, or that we evolved or adapted to our present condition from bacteria.

God started marriage

Between One Man [male] and One Woman [female]

Alert! It is evident that sexual immorality is in the world and in the churches. So when we begin to study the holy Scriptures concerning God and His creation, it is only right to begin to study sexual morals in view of holy marriage. For when God created the heavens and the earth, He also established marriage between one man (male) and one woman (female). For example, consider the story of Adam and Eve.

Consider the story of Adam and Eve

"The man gave names to all the cattle, and to the birds of the sky, and to every beast of the field, but for Adam there was not found a helper suitable for him. So the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, and he slept; then He took one of his ribs and closed up the flesh at that place. The LORD God fashioned into a woman the rib which He had taken from the man, and brought her to the man. The man said, 'This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh; she shall be called woman, because she was taken out of man.' For this reason a man shall leave his father and his mother, and be joined to his wife, and they shall become one flesh" (Ge 2:20-24).

1. In what were they "joined" together by God?

He "joined" them together in marriage, not in sexual immorality, for the Scripture calls Eve "his wife" (Ge 2:24), not his girlfriend. It was understood that he was "joined to his wife" (Ge 2:24). When a man has a wife this indicates that he is married to her. They were not "boyfriend and girlfriend." It says that Adam had sexual relations with "his wife" (Ge 4:1), not his girlfriend or fiancée, for this would be sexual immorality. They were not just cohabiting or living together, without first being married, to see if they were compatible, for this is sexual immorality.

2. Whom did God join to the man in marriage?

He brought "a woman" to the man for a wife, made from Adam's own rib (Ge 2:22). So from the beginning, God designed marriage to be between a man and a

woman, a male and a female, not a man and a man or a woman and a woman, for these would be the perverted sins of homosexuality and lesbianism. Homosexuals and lesbians are not straight, but crooked (perverted). Besides, man is not "suitable" for man, but woman has been designed to be "suitable for him". Woman was made by God to suit man. A man does not suit a man! A woman does not suit a woman!

3. Did God intend for only Adam and Eve to be married?

God foretold why every future man would "leave his father and mother;" to be "joined to his wife" (Ge 2:24). So it is God's will and plan for all subsequent men who want to have a woman to be first joined to her in marriage before having her; to take her as his wife. Additionally, a man would leave "his father and his mother" (Ge 2:24). So from the beginning, God planned for the family to be made up of a father and a mother, not a father and a father (male and male) or mother and a mother (female and female). It is utterly obvious that children would come only from a father (a male) and a mother (a female), not a perversion of this. Hence, "He created them male and female, and He blessed them" (Ge 5:2).

Conclusion

With Adam and Eve, the first man and woman, God established marriage between one man (a male) and one woman (a female). So marriage is from God. It is holy. But any other kind of union is not.

Note: Jesus upheld marriage by teaching against divorce, because He said that it leads to the sin of adultery (SEE Mt 19:3-12). This is why God said, "I hate divorce" (Mal 2:16). Unless they repent, God said that He will judge, that is, condemn everyone who continues to dishonor holy marriage through the sins of adultery, fornication, promiscuity, or perversions. For example, the New Testament says, "Let marriage be held in honor among all, and the marriage bed be undefiled, for the fornicator and adulterer God will judge" (He 13:4). So marriage is to be honored among all peoples, nations, and men. Otherwise, God will condemn anyone for dishonoring it through the sins of fornication, adultery, and perversions. Later in this course, in the lesson on repentance, we will study the sexual relationships which violate the Scriptures concerning holy marriage.

Man: Made advanced or primitive?

Man ruled the animals

As soon as he was created, man [literally "Adam" in the Hebrew], was given rule over the animals. "Rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over every living thing that moves on the earth" (Ge 1:28).

Adam farmed

When God planted a garden in Eden (Ge 2:8), He put man in it and commanded him to cultivate and keep it (Ge 2:15-17). When man was created, he was able to listen and receive commands from his Creator. He was able to perform all that he was asked to do in keeping the garden, even cultivating it for proper growth.

Adam and Eve spoke fluently

Adam gave names to the animals. "The man gave names to all the cattle, and to the birds of the sky, and to every beast of the field" (Ge 2:20). He spoke about his wife (Ge 2:23) and named her "Eve" (Ge 3:20). He talked with God (Ge 3:9-24). So he was fluent in speech. The woman also spoke. Man needed someone like himself to relate to or correspond with. Man talked so he needed someone with whom to talk. Animals were not created to speak. So God made woman to be an appropriate, intelligent match for man in marriage. We know that she reasoned verbally with the Devil (Ge 3:1-6) and also spoke with God (Ge 3:13). So in conversation and in other good things, woman was created to be sufficient for her task to relate to man.

He was created in God's image

Moreover, Adam was created in the likeness of God vs. an animal. God made animals in their own kind (Ge 1:24, 25). But later He made man in His own image or kind (Ge 1:27). And since the Creator is infinitely wise, man who was made in His image was given a portion of that intellect and ability. So right from the start, man was made in an image that was far superior than any animal. Mankind is not animalkind. Mankind is greater than animalkind. All of these things show that, unlike the animals, man and woman were created as highly intelligent beings, from their very beginnings. Man did not change or evolve from some lower, less intelligent or primitive life form, D.N.A., kind, or animal, like apes. Apes were made in their own kind, not in the image of God. Man began and still is in the highest life form. He was created to be like God. This will not change or evolve. God did not create man to evolve from some other kind, nor to evolve into some other kind.

Conclusion about creation

The awesome power of God and His word are seen in creation. In six literal days, He spoke the world quickly into being out of nothing, both land and sea, birds and creeping things, and plants. In His kind or image, He created intelligent human life out of the dust of the ground. He gave man a purpose in life and a suitable helper in marriage, woman. What God made was good. *But from the beginning, God had an enemy that was working to destroy everything good, especially man and woman.*

God has an enemy of everything good!



Sin began by Satan's false teaching on receiving eternal life

In the beginning, God planted a garden toward the east, in Eden. He put man in the garden to cultivate and keep it (Ge 2:8, 15). God commanded man, and woman, not to eat from one of its trees, the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, or else he would surely have to die (Ge 2:16, 17). But soon after they received this commandment, the serpent, Satan, appeared and approached the woman to try to deceive her on it.

Now the serpent was more deceptive than any beast that God had made (Ge 3:1). By false promises and false assurances, he tempted Eve to eat of the forbidden fruit. He boldly assured her that she would not die if she ate from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil and that she would even be wiser for eating it. And although she knew the commandment of God (she actually quoted it to the Devil when he tested her knowledge of it), instead she believed the lie and ate the fruit and also gave some to the man to eat (Ge 3:6). In doing

Alert! The story of Adam and Eve teaches us that eternal life is conditional!

We must understand and notice this one thing: that from the very beginning (and even under any covenant with God, in any age), that Satan, through persuasive false teaching, tries to mislead all of us on how to receive eternal life, heaven. He does it by opposing the keeping or the obeying of certain key commandments, which God has said or indicated to His people, relate to a person's eternal life. For example, Satan taught Eve to disregard the Lord's commandment about touching or eating from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. This led to both Adam and Eve being judged by God as unworthy to eat of the tree of eternal life (SEE Ge 3:22, 23). And so, they did not receive eternal life. God did not permit them to have it! And so I urge you to beware of teachers who oppose the keeping of the commandments which the Lord said or indicated relate to being saved and receiving eternal life (like the ones studied in this course). God does not save or give eternal life to rebels! For a powerful short study on this subject, get a copy of my tract: "Eternal Security" "You Surely Will Not Die!" (Ge 3:4).

Beware of certain teachers who give false unconditional assurances on eternal life.

so, everybody (Adam, Eve, and the serpent) sinned against the holy will and commandment of God. And as we will see shortly, not without severe consequences for each one of them.

Now after they ate, Adam and Eve realized that they were naked and they were ashamed (Ge 3:7). Therefore, they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves. Later, when they heard the sound of God walking in the

garden, they hid themselves and were afraid because they still felt ashamed for their lack of proper clothing (Ge 3:8-10). For example, when God called out to the man to find him, the man replied that they were afraid because they were naked (Ge 3:8-10). Then God said, **"Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree of which I commanded you not to eat?"** (Ge 3:11). Adam replied that the woman gave him some of it to eat. Then God questioned the woman, saying, **"What is this you have done?"** (Ge 3:13). She replied that the serpent deceived her to eat of it. Then God punished them for this.

God judged Satan, man, and woman for their sins

1. Satan's punishment

God cursed Satan more than any other beast, telling him that on his belly he shall go all the days of his life (Ge 3:14). God also foretold the future to him, saying that He would put enmity [ill feelings] between his offspring and the offspring of the woman (Ge 3:15).

Note: This was not a prediction that the Devil would actually father physical offspring, but instead it was a Messianic foretelling or prophecy about the feelings between those who would believe in the Messiah and those who would not believe.

2. Woman's punishment

God would greatly increase her pain in childbirth (Ge 3:16). Man would also rule over her. She would suffer physical death because God would put her out of the garden where the tree of eternal life was (Ge 3:22-24). And so, she would not be able to eat of it to receive or obtain eternal life.

3. Man's punishment

The ground would be cursed for him because he obeyed the voice of his wife and ate. Through difficult labor the ground would produce for him (Ge 3:17-19). He also would suffer physical death because God would put him out of the garden where the tree of eternal life was (Ge 3:22-24). And so, he too would not be able to eat of it and receive eternal life. God did not let Adam and Eve receive eternal life.

Note: Before God sent them out of the garden, He made them clothing out of animal skins (Ge 3:21). God proved that His word would come true when He said that they would surely die if they ate of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. So He blocked the way to the tree of life by putting a guard near the entrance of the garden and a flaming sword which turned in every direction (Ge 3:22-24). Paradise with God was lost. And sin and death would enter the world because of Adam's sin. And the ability to reach out and obtain eternal life would have to wait until the Christ.

God judged Cain for his sin

Adam and Eve began to have children. Their firstborn was Cain, and their second was Abel. As time went on, both Cain and Abel brought offerings to God in worship of Him. God was pleased with Abel's offering, but not with Cain's (Ge 4:1-5). So Cain grew angry. Then God said to Cain, **"Why are you angry? And why has your countenance fallen? If you do well, will not your countenance be lifted up? And if you do not do well, sin is crouching at the door; and its desire is for you, but you must master it"** (Ge 4:6, 7). Cain did not listen to God's correction. Instead, he killed his brother Abel (Ge 4:8). We can see that sin spread into the lives of Adam's children. So God judged Cain for his sin (Ge 4:9-16). He cursed his work with the ground and sent him away from the presence of the Lord.

Note: In making an offering to God, both Cain and Abel demonstrated that they were worshipers of God. But God was pleased with only one worshiper. What about your worship of God? Do you please God in your offerings? Is your worship of God acceptable in His sight or would He tell you to do better? Would God tell you that sin is crouching at your door if you have not done well in your offerings to him? What kind of excellent offerings does God want you to make today (Ro 12:1, 2)?

God judged the world for its sins

As time went on, men multiplied over the face of the earth and so did their sins (Ge 6:1). "Then the LORD saw that the wickedness of man was great on the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. The LORD said, 'I will blot out man whom I have created from the face of the land, from man to animals to creeping things and to birds of the sky; for I am sorry that I have made them.' But Noah found favor [i.e. **GRACE**] in the eyes of the LORD" (Ge 6:5, 7, 8).

God also said, "The end of all flesh has come before Me; for the earth is filled with violence because of them; and behold, I am about to destroy them with the earth" (Ge 6:13). He planned to exterminate sinners from the earth with a worldwide flood. This is an example of God's wrath.

But Noah was saved by the grace [i.e. favor] of God

This is an example of God's grace, "But Noah found favor [i.e. **GRACE**] in the eyes of the LORD" (Ge 6:8). Noah and his family, eight people in all, would be saved by the grace of God through the wrath of the flood waters. This was because Noah was a righteous and blameless man who walked with God (Ge 6:8, 9). God said to Noah: "You alone I have seen to be righteous before Me in this time" (Ge 7:1). Obviously,

the unrighteous would not be saved. God does not favor, that is grace, unrighteousness. God does not favor sin. Indeed, as we can see, His wrath is upon it. But He will forgive our sins if we repent of them. He favors repentance. Amen. Now if anyone favors sin, he is sinning, permissive, and "turning the grace of our God into licentiousness" (Jude 1:4), which means to somehow give license or permission sin.

Now God told Noah to build an ark to save his family and many animals alive during the flood. Afterward, they all would be used by God to replenish the earth with offspring (Ge 6:14, 18-22). Noah and the animals entered the ark. Then God sent rain for 40 days and 40 nights. The whole earth was flooded for 150 days. Water rose above the highest mountains. All creatures, man and animal, died (Ge 7:17-24). Afterward, the water went down, so Noah and the animals left the ark. God told them to be fruitful and multiply over the earth. God made an agreement with man never to flood the whole earth again. He gave a sign to indicate this promise, the rainbow in the sky (Ge 9:11-17).

But still, Adam's sin would cause everyone of us to become sinners, including you and me (SEE Ro 5:12). **But God, before He created the world, planned to make a way for us to be saved like Noah, by His grace, through Abraham's offspring, the Messiah.** God chose Abraham, his son Isaac, and his grandson Jacob, that is Israel, the Jews, to bring forth the Messiah into the world to save it!

God chose Abraham, Isaac, & Jacob [Israel]

THE PATRIARCHAL AGE [2,000 B.C. to 1,400 B.C.] Genesis chpts. 12-50

"I have chosen him [Abraham]" (Ge 18:19)

The Patriarchs

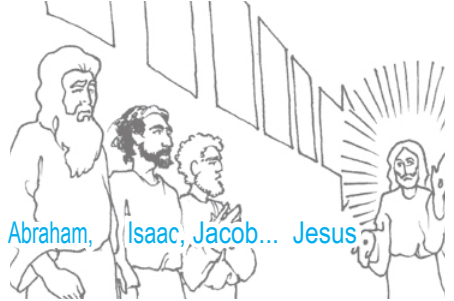
Abraham was the beginning of the "patriarchs," which means, in the context of Scripture, Jewish fathers or fathers of the nation of the Jews, Israel. For example, "Abraham, the patriarch, gave a tenth" (He 7:4), and "Jacob became the father of the twelve patriarchs" (Ac 7:8). The twelve included Joseph and his brothers. David was also called a patriarch (Ac 2:29), but he lived under the Mosaic Age Law, whereas Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob did not. All of them and more helped lead and father the Jewish nation at critical points in their history up until the time of Christ or The Christian Age.

Note: Abraham was first called a "Hebrew" (Ge 14:13), meaning a Jew.

God called Abraham with great promises

1. A great name, nation, and blessing to all the families of the earth

"Now the LORD said to Abram, 'Go forth from your country, and from your relatives, and from your father's house, to the land which I will show you; and I will make you a great nation, and I will bless you, and make your name great; and so you shall be a blessing; and I will bless those who bless you, and the



one who curses you I will curse. And in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed' " (Ge 12:1-3). Abraham believed God and began to go to the land which God would show him, the land of Canaan (Ge 12:4, 5). He was seventy-five when he left with his wife Sarai and his nephew Lot.

God Judged Sodom, but Saved Lot by His Grace

"The Lord said, 'Shall I hide from Abraham what I am about to do [to Sodom and Gomorrah], since Abraham will surely become a great and mighty nation, and in him all the nations of the earth will be blessed? For I have chosen him, so that he may command his children and his household after him to keep the way of the LORD' " (Ge 18:17-19). Now the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were filled with bold homosexuals. So God let Abraham know that He was going to destroy both of these cities for their sin. Then He rained down fire and brimstone from heaven to destroy everyone in them except for Abraham's righteous nephew Lot and his family. But when they were escaping the city, Lot's wife looked back, even though she and the others were warned by God not to do so. Therefore she turned into a pillar of salt (Ge 18:20-19:29).

2. A promise that his descendants [thru Sarah] would receive land

When they arrived in the land of Canaan, the Lord appeared to Abraham and said, **"To your descendants I will give this land"** (Ge 12:7). That was the first foretelling about the "Promised Land," or land that was promised by God, that the Jews would later inherit.

3. The promise of a child

God also promised Abraham that He would give the land of Canaan to his descendants (Ge 12:7). But Abraham said, **"O, LORD God, what will You give me, since I am childless, and the heir of my house is Eliezer of Damascus?"** (Ge 15:2). Then God showed him the stars of heaven and compared the number of them to Abraham's descendants that would come after him (Ge 15:4, 5). Then Abraham believed God, even though he was old and his wife was past childbearing age. Because of this, God considered him righteous (Ge 15:6). Then God foretold to Abraham that his descendants would be enslaved for 400 years in a land that was not theirs. But afterward God would judge that nation and then Israel would return to the land of Canaan to possess it (Ge 15:7-21).

Note: Now since Sarai, Abram's wife, believed that God had kept her from having children, she thought that she could build a family through Hagar, her slave. So she gave Hagar to Abram for a wife (Ge 16:1-3). But after Hagar conceived she despised Sarai. Then Sarai mistreated her, so she ran away. But an angel found Hagar and told her to return to her mistress and submit to her, and that God would greatly increase her descendants, and that she would bear a son and name him Ishmael, because God has heard her misery [Ishmael means "God hears"]. He would be a wild donkey of a man and live in hostility toward everyone, including his brothers (Ge 16:4-12).

God made a covenant with Abraham and his descendants, the Jews

When Abram was 99 years old, God made a covenant with him, and changed his name to Abraham, which means "father of the multitude". The sign of the covenant would be that all the males of Abraham's household would be circumcised (Ge 17:1-12). Then God changed Sarai's name to Sarah, which means "princess". She would mother a son, and nations and kings would come from her. **"Then Abraham fell on his face and laughed, and said in his heart, 'Will a child be born to a man one hundred years old? And will Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a child?' "** (Ge 17:17). So God told them to name the child Isaac, which means "He laughs" (Ge 17:19). Later, Sarah laughed. **"And the LORD said to Abraham, 'Why did Sarah laugh, saying, 'Shall I indeed bear a child, when I am so old?' "Is anything too difficult for the LORD?' "** (Ge 18:13, 14).

Isaac was born and Ishmael was rejected

By God's grace (Ge 21:1), Sarah conceived and bore a son to Abraham in his old age. When he was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him. And Sarah said, **"God has made laughter for me; everyone who hears will laugh with me"** (Ge 21:6). Now the child grew and on the day that he was weaned, Abraham had a great feast. But Sarah noticed that Ishmael was mocking, so she said to Abraham, **"Drive out this maid and her son, for the son of this maid shall not be an heir with my son Isaac"** (Ge 21:10). And even though Abraham was greatly distressed because it concerned his son, God said to him: **"Do**



Events quickly shift from Isaac to Jacob and his children

1. Jacob receives the birthright and the blessing

not be distressed because of the lad and your maid; whatever Sarah tells you, listen to her, for through Isaac your descendants shall be named" (Ge 21:12). Therefore, the promises of God to Abraham, including the Promised Land of Canaan, and especially the promise of blessing all the families of the earth through Abraham in the Messiah, would be through Isaac, not Ishmael.

God tested Abraham's faith in Him

"Now it came about after these things, that God tested Abraham" (Ge 22:1). He was to sacrifice his only son, whom he loved, as a burnt offering on a mountain that God would show him. So when he arrived at the mountain, he bound his son and laid him on top of the wood of the altar. Then he stretched out his arm and grabbed the knife to slay his son. "But the angel of the Lord called to him from heaven, and said, 'Abraham, Abraham!' And he said, 'Here I am.' He said, 'Do not stretch out your hand against the lad, and do nothing to him; for now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me' " (Ge 22:11, 12). Therefore, God said that He would fulfill all His previous promises that He gave to Abraham (Ge 22:16-18).

After Isaac was grown, his mother, Sarah, died and Abraham buried her in the cave of Machpelah. Then Abraham found a wife for Isaac from his relatives, Rebekah. This comforted Isaac. [At some point, Abraham also died and Isaac and Ishmael buried him at Machpelah.] Rebekah conceived and had twin boys. But as they were being born, one was grabbing the heel of the other. So he was called Jacob, a supplanter, one who takes by the heel. The child that came out first was named Esau (Ge 24-26).

After the twins were grown, Esau decided to sell his firstborn birthright to his brother for a bowl of soup (Ge 25:27-34). Sometime later, their father, Isaac, was approaching death and wanted to bless his firstborn before he died. So he told Esau to go hunt for some wild game and to prepare it for him to eat so that he may give him his blessing before he died. But Rebekah was listening to this and instead wanted Jacob to be blessed. So while Esau was hunting she prepared food and then had Jacob, who pretended to be his brother, take it to Isaac. And since Isaac's eyes were dim, Jacob succeeded in taking away the blessing of the firstborn from his brother. So because of this, Esau bore a grudge against Jacob and planned to kill him when his father died (Ge 27). Rebekah found out about this and protected Jacob by having his father Isaac send him to another land to find a wife from her relatives (Ge 27:42-28:5).

When Jacob went to his mother's relatives, Laban and his family, he ended up marrying two of his uncle's daughters. He worked fourteen years for his uncle Laban in order to have Rachel and Leah for his wives. Jacob had twelve sons and one daughter by these two women and their maids. The children's names were: Dinah, Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Dan, Joseph, Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun (Ge 29-31).

2. God changed Jacob's name to Israel

As time went on, the Lord caused Jacob and his family to return to the land of his parents. Along the way he prepared gifts and sent them to his brother Esau, for he heard that Esau was approaching him with many men. By sending the gifts ahead of himself, Jacob was hoping to find favor with Esau (Ge 32:11, 13-20). [The last he knew, his brother wanted to kill him.] Then Jacob was left alone and he wrestled with an angel. The angel said, **"Let me go, for the dawn is breaking."** But he [Jacob] said, **"I will not let you go unless you bless me."** So he said to him, **"What is your name?"** He said, **"Jacob."** And he said, **"Your name shall no longer be Jacob, but Israel: for you have striven with God and with men and have prevailed"** (Ge 32:26-28). Then his brother accepted the gifts and did not kill Jacob (Ge 33). Jacob returned to the land of Canaan in peace.

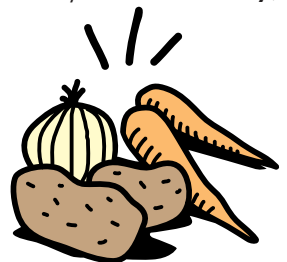
3. Joseph suffers to greatness

Joseph, Jacob's next to last-born son, was a prophet. His dreams and visions from God of the future involved his brothers and parents paying kingly homage to him. These things made his brothers jealous, and they hated him.

They threw him in a pit in the ground and were going to kill him. But instead they decided to sell him as a slave. So they put blood on Joseph's coat, which his father had made for him, and they showed it to their father. They lied to Him, telling him that Joseph must have died by a wild animal (Ge 37). This grieved Israel.

Now Joseph was sold to a man in Egypt. God was with Joseph, and blessed him in everything that he did. So his master put him in charge of his household. When his master's wife tried to have relations with Joseph, he refused and ran away from her. She lied about this to her husband and said that Joseph tried to lay with her. So his master put him in prison. But God blessed Joseph in everything that he did. So the Chief Jailer put him in charge of all the prisoners (Ge 39). After two years Joseph was set free from prison because Pharaoh, king of Egypt, had dream and heard that Joseph could interpret it. So Joseph interpreted the dream for the king, telling him that God was informing Pharaoh that a severe famine was coming over all the land. So the king appointed Joseph to be second in charge over Egypt and to be in charge of laying up food for the famine (Ge 40, 41). In doing so, Joseph sustained the whole land. He also sustained his father and brothers, who came to him because they needed food. Joseph now understood that God sold him as a slave into Egypt to keep many alive during the famine. Thus, Joseph was reunited with his family in peace (Ge 42-47). **But eventually,**

**Egypt would
enslave Israel.
Yet, God would
soon deliver
Israel from
the hand of
the Egyptians.**



God delivered Israel through Moses

THE MOSAIC AGE [1,400 B.C. to 33 A.D.] Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy

Moses: Miracle baby, miracle worker, prophet, covenant-bearer

Jacob and his sons moved to Egypt to be with Joseph, and there they multiplied greatly in number. Eventually, Israel died and Joseph and his brothers' generation died (Ex 1:6, 7). But because of their great numbers, the Egyptians were afraid of the Israelites and forced them into slavery (Ex 1:8-14). This fulfilled God's prophecy to Abraham, that his descendants would be enslaved in a foreign land (Ge 15:13). But, through Moses, God would free them and bring them out of Egypt to receive the land that God promised to give to the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (Israel).

Now in order to put an end to the growth of Israel, the Egyptians ordered that every newborn Hebrew son should be put to death (Ex 1:15-22). But by faith toward God, a woman of Israel hid her baby in a basket along side the Nile River so that he would not be killed. Afterward, Pharaoh's daughter came to the Nile with her maidens and saw the basket. She opened it and the baby was crying, and she had pity on him. Moses' sister was nearby and asked Pharaoh's daughter if she would like a nurse to feed the boy for her. She agreed and the boy's sister went and got Moses' mother to be the nurse. Pharaoh's daughter then took the boy to be her son. She called him Moses because she took him out of the water (Ex 2:1-10). When Moses grew older, he decided to look into the circumstances of his people,



the Jews. So as he was out walking, he saw an Egyptian beating a Hebrew. Moses killed the Egyptian and hid him in the sand. When this was found out, Pharaoh tried to kill Moses. So Moses

fled to the land of Midian and became a shepherd (Ex 2:11-22).

After many days, the king of Egypt died and the sons of Israel were crying out because of their slavery. Then God began to fulfill His promise to Abraham, to free his descendants at the appointed time (Ge 15:14). He was going to use Moses to do it. While Moses was out pasturing flocks, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a blazing fire from the midst of a bush. Yet, the bush was not being destroyed by the blazing fire. Moses said, **"I must turn aside now and see this marvelous sight, why the bush is not burned up"** (Ex 3:3). From the burning bush, God told Moses that He was going to bring Israel out of Egypt. God's promise would be fulfilled to bring Abraham's descendants into the Promised Land (Ex 3:4-8). God said to Moses, **"Come now, and I will send you to Pharaoh, so that you may bring My people, the sons of Israel, out of Egypt"** (Ex 3:10). But God knew that Pharaoh would not let Israel leave. So He said, **"I will stretch out My hand, and strike Egypt with all My miracles which I shall do in the midst of it; and after that he will let you go"** (Ex 3:20). But Moses was

slow to agree to do what the Lord told him to do, so God encouraged him greatly. Still, Moses did not want to be sent (Ex 4:13). Then God got angry with Moses. After this, Moses obeyed God and went (Ex 4:14-31).

The Miracles of Moses

God performed miracles in the land of Egypt to cause them to free Israel to serve the Lord (Ex 3:20). God also did all of these miracles through Moses to show His great power and to make His name well known in all the earth (Ex 9:14-16; Ro 9:17-24). Yet, throughout all of these miracles, Pharaoh's heart would be continually hardened against Israel. He would not let them leave to worship God in the wilderness. But with one last miracle (the Passover miracle), God would deliver Israel out of Egypt. Now there were two categories of miracles. First, the miracles which were copied by Egypt's magicians-- Aaron's staff became a serpent (Ex 7:9-13); The Nile River turned to blood (Ex 7:17-24); Frogs over all the land and into homes (Ex 8:1-8). Second, the miracles which only Moses could do-- Gnats on man and beast (Ex 8:18, 19); Insects on Egyptians, but not Israel (Ex 8:21-24); Egyptians' livestock killed, but not the

Israelites' (Ex 9:1-7); Boils on the Egyptians (Ex 9:8-12); Hail, locusts, and darkness, but light was in Israel (Ex 9:17:1-10:29).

The Miracle of Parting the Red Sea

After the Passover miracle, God hardened Pharaoh's heart to pursue the Israelites as they left. But the Lord would use this opportunity to make His name honored and to teach Egypt that He is the Lord. As the Israelites left Egypt, God divided the Red Sea so that they could pass through on dry ground. But when the Egyptians eventually followed them through it, God let the wall of water crash down to destroy the army of Pharaoh (Ex 14).

Note: But soon after the Israelites were freed from Egypt, they began to disobey God. They grumbled against Moses because they had no water, meat, or bread. They said, "Would that we had died by the Lord's hand in the land of Egypt, when we sat by the pots of meat, when we ate bread to the full; for you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill this whole assembly with hunger" (Ex 16:3). God gave them water and began to test them to see whether or not they would walk in His instruction. He gave them bread from heaven, manna, which appeared on the ground. He told them to gather enough manna for one day. But they disobeyed (Ex 15:23-16:36).

God gave Israel several different kinds of laws

These include the Ten Commandments, the tabernacle laws, the priesthood laws, and miscellaneous other laws which relate to the Israelites' conduct in the promised land.

The Ten Commandments

God told Moses to come up to Mount Sinai. Then, with His own finger, God Himself wrote ten special commandments on tablets of stone (Ex 20:1-17; 32:1-16). He gave them to Moses to give to Israel. God promised to punish all who failed to follow them (Ex 20:5, 7, 12).

Note: Nine of the Ten Commandments are repeated as commands in the New Covenant. So, Christians are to keep or practice them as a result of faith in Jesus Christ. But Christians are not required to keep the Sabbath (SEE Col 2:14, 16). Yet Christians are required to habitually attend a Christian church (SEE He 10:24, 25). But, lest someone be confused, attending Christian church is not a form of keeping the Sabbath. For a variety of reasons, the Sabbath and Christian church are two completely different things, simply because they are from two different covenants, with very different ways to worship God.

The Passover miracle freed Israel

With one last miracle, God would deliver Israel out of Egypt. And since it would be a night to remember, God told Israel to begin a memorial feast (the Passover Feast; also called the Feast of Unleavened Bread). They were to make bread in a hurry, without leaven, because that night, God was going to deliver them. They were to prepare a lamb or goat and put some of the blood on the lintel of the door of their homes. God would see that blood and not destroy their firstborn. Around midnight, God killed all the firstborn of the Egyptians, both man and beast, because they did not have the blood of the Passover lamb on their door (Ex 8:21-11:10). But none of the firstborn of Israel were killed. That night, the Egyptians urged Israel to leave, and even gave them gold and silver and things of great value (Ex 12-13). **This is another example of God's grace, and His wrath.**

The Other Laws Given to Israel

There were more laws given to Israel than the Ten Commandments. They can be found in Exodus chapters 21 through 23. Below, a brief summary of each type of law is listed. If a "D" is listed after a verse, breaking that particular law was punishable by the death penalty. [Likewise, breaking any one of the Ten Commandments was punishable by death as well.]

Note: Of course, in one sense, the whole Bible is a law book, it is the Law of the Lord. Therefore these laws listed below are not the only laws that God gave Israel to obey. But they are a significant part of them.

Exodus chapter 21

1. Slave Laws vs. 2-11
2. Murder vs. 12-14 **D**
3. Child Striking Parents vs. 15 **D**
4. Kidnapping vs. 16 **D**
5. Cursing Father or Mother vs. 17 **D**
6. Personal Injury Laws vs. 18-36 w/ Some Requiring **D** Death

Exodus chapter 22

1. Property Damage Laws vs. 1-15
2. Laws for a Man who Seduces a Virgin vs. 16-17
3. Sorcery vs. 18 **D**
4. Relations with an Animal vs. 19 **D**
5. Sacrificing to Other Gods vs. 20 **D**
6. How to Treat Strangers, Widows, Orphans vs. 21-24
7. Lending Laws to Poor Israelites vs. 25-27
8. Do Not Speak Evil of God or a Ruler vs. 28
9. Give God Some of All Increases & the Firstborn vs. 29-30
10. Do Not Eat Flesh Torn to Pieces in the Field vs. 31

Exodus chapter 23

1. Do Not Join with Others Pervert What Is Right vs. 1-3
2. Help Your Enemies' Wandering or Overburdened Animal vs. 4-5
3. Do Not Pervert Justice or Kill the Innocent/Righteous vs. 6-7
4. Do Not Take a Bribe vs. 8
5. Do Not Oppress Strangers vs. 9
6. Let Your Land Lie Fallow in 7th yr. and Let the Poor and Animals Eat from It vs. 10-11
7. Rest & Refresh Yourself & All Under Your Authority on the 7th Day vs. 12
8. Do Not Mention the Names of Other god's vs. 13
9. Observe Three Yearly Celebrations vs. 14
10. Sacrifice w/o Leaven, Do Not Let Fat Remain until the Next Day vs. 18
11. Bring Your Choice 1st Fruits of the Soil into God's House vs. 19
12. Do Not Boil a Young Goat in Its Mother's Milk vs. 19
13. How to Deal w/ Canaanites in Promised Land vs. 20-33

The Ten Commandments

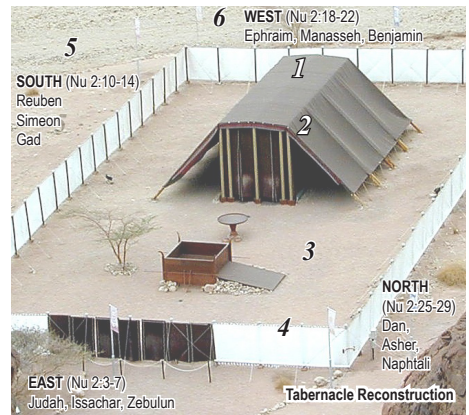
1. You shall have no other gods before Me (Ex 20:3). This is a limitation to only worship the Creator, God.
2. You shall not make for yourself an idol (Ex 20:4, 5), or any likeness of what is in heaven above or on the earth beneath or in the water under the earth. You shall not worship them or serve them. Man is forbidden to worship things which have been created.
3. You shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain (Ex 20:7). Meaningless, foul, or unholy use of God's name is forbidden, whether it be Christ, God, Jesus, Lord, etc.
4. Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy (Ex. 20:8). The Sabbath day of rest, which was to be kept on the seventh day of the week, in our case Saturday, and which was first and only commanded in Moses' Law, is not required to be kept in the Christian Age (READ Col 2:14, 16; Ro 10:4). But Christians are commanded and required to go to church (See He 10:24, 25). So it is a sin to neglect going to church. But the Sabbath is not Christian church. These are two totally different things, since they are two totally different covenants, with two totally different requirements and ways to worship.
5. Honor your father and your mother (Ex 20:12). Parents are to be valued highly in word and in deed by their children.
6. You shall not murder (Ex 20:13). The shedding of innocent blood is forbidden.
7. You shall not commit adultery (Ex 20:14). No one is to be involved in a sexual relationship which dishonors God's idea and definition of marriage (SEE He 13:4). Fornication and adultery (and of course perversions) dishonor the meaning and purpose and intent of marriage. So no one is to have sexual relations outside of marriage (fornication), or have an affair while married (adultery), or marry someone else's spouse (adultery). There is more about this in the lesson on repentance.
8. You shall not steal (Ex 20:15). No one is to gain by theft.
9. You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor (Ex 20:16). Lying about someone is forbidden.
10. You shall not covet anything that belongs to your neighbor, including his house, wife, servant, animal, etc. (Ex 20:17). Strong or envious desire for things which belong to another is forbidden.

The Tabernacle and Its Laws

When Moses spent 40 days and nights on Mount Sinai receiving the Ten Commandments from God, the Lord also showed him the pattern of the tabernacle which Israel was to build for God. The tabernacle was a movable tent-like structure that was used for offering sacrifices to God (Ex 25-31). **"Let them construct a sanctuary for Me, that I may dwell among them"** (Ex 25:8). The laws, design, and detailed building of a tabernacle is contained in Exodus 25-31, 35-40. God made the design and gave it to Moses (Ex 25:9; 26:30). Bezalel and Oholiab were called by God to make the tabernacle. God put great skill, craftsmanship, and wisdom into their hearts to make all that He commanded them to make (Ex 31:1-5). Aaron and his sons were chosen and appointed as priests to minister in the tabernacle (Ex 28:1). The rest of the Levites were chosen and appointed to serve as the priest's assistants (Nu 1:50, 3:6-9), yet they were not to do what the priests were commanded to do (Nu 16:1-40).

Tabernacle notes

- 1 Holy of Holies was 15 by 15 feet, containing two carved cherubim, the ark of the covenant with the mercy seat on it, where God would meet above to give words to Moses to command Israel (Ex 26:33, 34; 25:10-22; 40:20, 21).
- 2 Holy Place was 30 by 15 feet, containing the altar of incense, table for the showbread, and the candlestick (Ex 26:33; 40:22-27).
- 3 Courtyard, containing the laver (basin) and the altar of burnt offerings (Ex 40:29-32).
- 4 The Outside Curtain Walls were 75 by 100 feet with a 30 foot entrance (Ex 27:9-15).
- 5 Camping Positions of the 12 tribes around the tabernacle (Nu 2:1-34). The Levites camped around the tabernacle, seemingly between the tent and the other tribes (Nu 1:50-53).
- 6 Tribal positions/responsibilities became altered for some (a) Ge 49:5-7; De. 33:8-11; Nu 1:50, 2:17, 35:2, 7 (b) Ge 48:1, 5, 6; De 33:13-17; Nu 2:2, 18, 20.



Note: As Moses stayed on Mount Sinai for 40 days and nights, receiving the law of God and the plans for the tabernacle, the Israelites got impatient and decided to make their own god, a golden calf and they started to sing and to dance around it. When Moses came down from the mountain with the two tablets of stone, he smashed them and started to punish the Israelites for their great sin. About three thousand men died that day for this sin (Ex 32).

The Priesthood, Levite, and Lineage Laws

God chose Aaron and his family, from the tribe of Levi, to serve in the tabernacle. They would be called the priests. No one else was permitted to become a priest of God unless he was a descendant of Aaron.

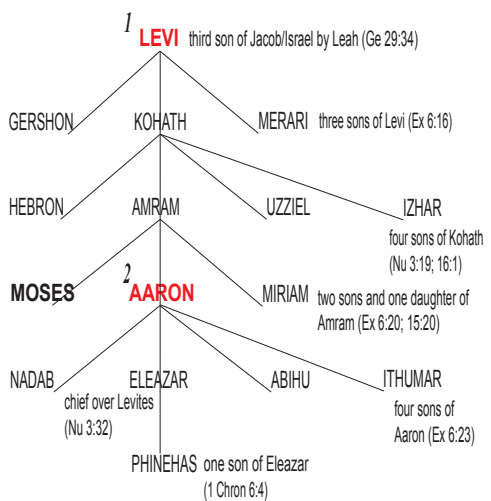
No one! *[Both the priest and the sacrifices he offered find complete fulfillment in Christ (SEE He 9:11, 12). Therefore, we do not need a priest in the Christian Age.]* The priests received the sacrifices and offerings from the people and then offered them to God. Many of these were animal offerings. Their blood was used for the forgiveness of the people's sins, including the priests' own sins (Leviticus).

Priesthood, Levite notes (for Chart on Next Page)

- 1 The Levites were instead of the firstborn of all the tribes (Nu 3:41, 45; 8:16, 17).
- 2 The Priests must belong to Aaron's family which was specially chosen from the Levites (Ex 28:1). No one could be a priest unless he was a male descendant of Aaron. Therefore, a priest was a Levite but a Levite was not necessarily a priest.

God numbered Israel and showed wrath against their sins

Sometime after their deliverance from Egypt, the book of Numbers records the total Israelite men at 603,550 (Nu 2:32). Also recorded in this book are more of the Israelites' sins and the wrath which God showed against them. For example: Let the fire of God kill them, because they complained of their hardships in the hearing of the Lord (Nu 11:1-3). Let a severe plague kill them, since they were not content with the manna which God gave them, but instead craved other food (Nu 11:4-35). Let her be leprous, because Miriam and Aaron opposed God's chosen servant Moses (Nu 12). God proved that they did not have the same calling as Moses or the same authority. They, not God, put themselves first. Wander aimlessly for 40 years until all of the older generation dies, except for Joshua and Caleb, because they were afraid to take the Promised Land (Nu 13-14:38). Let the earth swallow them, because Dathan and Abiram opposed Moses and Aaron (Nu 16). Again, God proved that these people did not have the same calling and authority as Moses, even though they sought it or thought they had it. They, not God, put themselves first. Forbid the top two leaders from entering the Promised Land, since they sinned while bringing forth water (Nu 20). Let fiery serpents bite them, because they again complained about the food (Nu 21). Kill 24,000 of them with a plague, since they sinned by mixing with the Moabites and worshipping their gods (Nu 25). Fittingly, Moses warned them during this time, **"Be sure your sin will find you out"** (Nu 32:23). And so we see that it did. God severely judged them for it. Eventually you will not be able to hide your sin. Even in the Christian Age there are consequences for it (READ Col 3:25; Ro 1:18). So we need to repent!



Additional notes on the Levites

- (A) The Levites were purified (Nu 8:5-22); the priests were consecrated (Ex 29:1-37); the high priest was anointed (Le 4:3, 5, 16).
- (B) The priest's work was to: minister at the tabernacle (Le 1-7, etc.), teach the people the law of God (Le 10:11), and inquire for the people the will of God (Le 8:8; Ne 7:65).
- (C) The Levites were considered a gift to Aaron and his sons, given to assist them (apart from the altar) in their priestly functions. For example, in transporting the Tabernacle (Nu 3:5-13, 17-37), the Kohathites (who were not Aaron's sons) bear the most sacred parts; the Gershonites are responsible for the curtains; the Merarites in charge of the woodwork.
- (D) The Levites were given a tithe (10%) from the other tribes and the priests a tithe from the Levites (Nu 18:20-28)
- (E) Both the priest and the sacrifices he offered find complete fulfillment in Christ (He 9:11,12). **Therefore, we do not need a priest in the Christian Age.**

Moses Warned Israel to Obey Christ

After Israel wandered in the wilderness for forty years, God was ready to bring them into the Promised Land. But before they entered it, Moses taught them the Laws of God again (De 1-33). In his teaching, Moses gave Israel one of God's most important prophetic warnings about the Messiah. God said, **"I will raise up a prophet [the Messiah] from among their countrymen like you [Moses], and I will put My words in his mouth, and he shall speak to them all that I command him. It shall come about that whoever will not listen to My words which he shall speak in My name, I Myself will require it of him"** (De 18:18, 19;). Also read Acts 3:22, 23.

Note: After Moses saw the Promised Land from Mount Nebo he died and God buried him in the valley without anybody knowing the place (De 32:49, 34:1, 5, 6). Yet Satan argued with an angel over his body (Jude 1:9). Satan does not rest, even after we do.

God gave Israel the Promised Land

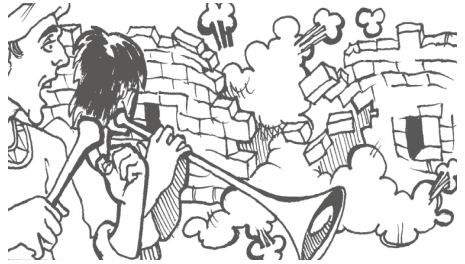
Joshua thru Malachi

Joshua led them in

Joshua, Moses' servant, was appointed by Moses and God Himself to lead Israel into the Promised Land (De 31:23). Yet, God also predicted that, in the future, Israel would break the covenant which He had made with them, and instead seek after other gods in the Promised Land (De 31:14-23). Now Moses saw the Promised Land from Mount Nebo, at the top of Pisgah, opposite of Jericho, then he died and God buried him in the valley (De 34:1-8). Now Joshua was filled with the spirit of wisdom since Moses laid his hands on him (De 34:9). God greatly encouraged Joshua and charged him to take the Promised Land. God commanded him to meditate on the Law of God day and night, and not to turn from it to the left or to the right so that he would be successful in all that he was called to do for Israel (Josh 1:2-9).

God helped Joshua take the land

When it was time to enter Promised Land, God parted the Jordan River for Joshua so that the Israelites could walk through on dry ground (Josh 3, 4). Then God sent his angel to fight for Israel. "Now it came about when Joshua was by Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked, and behold, a man was standing opposite him with his sword drawn in his hand, and Joshua went to him and said to him, 'Are you for us or for our adversaries?' He said, 'No, rather I indeed come now as captain of the host of the LORD.' And Joshua fell on his face to the earth, and bowed down, and said to him, 'What has my lord to say to his servant?' The captain of the Lord's host said to Joshua, 'Remove your sandals from your feet, for the place where you are standing is holy' " (Josh 5:13-15).



Jericho received God's wrath, but Rahab was saved by grace

Joshua sent two spies to view the land of Canaan, especially the city Jericho. When Jericho found out that spies were in the land they searched for them diligently. But, by faith toward God, Rahab, a harlot, welcomed the spies (He 11:31). She had heard what God did for Israel in leading them out of Egypt. So she began to fear God (Josh 2). Since Rahab helped these spies escape, they promised not to destroy her when they destroyed Jericho. Now Israel approached Jericho and marched around its walls several times and blew the trumpets. Then the walls fell down and they destroyed that city and its people. But they did not destroy Rahab and her relatives (Josh 6). This is another example of the grace and the wrath of God. He favored a sinner who repented and believed in Him, but destroyed those who did not.

Note: God told Israel not to take anything from Jericho. But Achan disobeyed. He took some silver and gold. This man's sin caused the Israelites to be defeated in their next battle at Ai. Then Joshua found out Achan's sin and had the congregation of Israel stone him to death (Josh 7). Then God sent Joshua and the men of war to destroy Ai (Josh 8:1-29). Then Joshua did what Moses foretold him to do (De 11:29; Josh 8:30-35). He built an altar to the Lord in Mount Ebal and sacrificed peace offerings. He wrote a copy of Moses' Law on stones. Half of the people stood in front of Mount Gerizim and half of them in front of Mount Ebal. Then he read all the words of the Law of Moses, the blessing and the curse, to the assembly, with the little ones, the women, and the strangers who were living among them.

After this Joshua took the whole land according to all that God spoke to Moses (Josh 11:23). In all, Joshua defeated 31 kings beyond the Jordan to the west (Josh 12:7-24).

The Kings Joshua defeated

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. king of Jericho | 17. king of Tappuah |
| 2. king of Ai | 18. king of Hopher |
| 3. Adoni-Zedek, king of Jerusalem | 19. king of Aphek |
| 4. Hoham, king of Hebron | 20. king of Lasharon |
| 5. Piram, king of Jarmuth | 21. Jobab, king of Madon |
| 6. Japhia, king of Lachish | 22. Jabin, king of Hazor |
| 7. Debir, king of Eglon | 23. king of Shimron Meron |
| 8. Horam, king of Gezer | 24. king of Achshaph |
| 9. king of Debir | 25. king of Taanach |
| 10. king of Geder | 26. king of Megiddo |
| 11. king of Hormah | 27. king of Kadesh |
| 12. king of Arad | 28. king of Jokneam |
| 13. king of Libnah | 29. king of Dor |
| 14. king of Adullam | 30. king of Gilgal |
| 15. king of Makkedah | 31. king of Tirzah |
| 16. king of Bethel | |

Note: Before Joshua died, he warned all of Israel against practicing false forms of worship, specifically idolatry (Josh 23, 24). He said, **"Choose for yourselves today whom you will serve: whether the gods which your fathers served which were beyond the River, or the gods of the Amorites in whose land you are living; but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord"** (Josh 24:15). The people responded favorably to Joshua's admonition and agreed to serve the Lord. But Joshua knew that they would be unfaithful. So he warned them, that if they were unfaithful, God would do them harm and consume them after He had done good to them. This would be an example of God's wrath.

After Joshua, Judges saved Israel

In the box to the right, read the outstanding inspired summary of the time of the Judges. It reveals what happened with the Jews from the end of Joshua's influential life to several generations afterward who were ruled by Judges.

The Judges of Israel

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Othniel (3:7-11) 40 yrs | 8. Jair (10:3-5) 22 yrs |
| 2. Ehud (3:12-30) 80 yrs | 9. Jephthah (11:1-12:7) 6 yrs |
| 3. Shamgar (3:31) | 10. Ibzan (12:8-10) 7 yrs |
| 4. Deborah/Barak (4:1-5:31) 40 yrs | 11. Elon (12:11-12) 10 yrs |
| 5. Gideon (6-8) 40 yrs | 12. Abdon (12:13-15) 8 yrs |
| 6. Abimelech (9) 3 yrs reigned
(not really a judge, a corrupt king of sorts) | 13. Samson (13-16) 20 yrs |
| 7. Tolah (10:1-2) 23 yrs | 14. Eli (1 Sa 4:18) 40 yrs a priest/judge |
| | 15. Samuel (1 Sam 1-25:1) |

Summary of Israel's Judges

"When Joshua had dismissed the people, the sons of Israel went each to his inheritance to possess the land. The people served the Lord all the days of Joshua, and all the days of the elders who survived Joshua, who had seen all the great work of the Lord which He had done for Israel. Then Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of the Lord, died at the age of one hundred and ten. And they buried him in the territory of his inheritance in Timnath-heres, in the hill country of Ephraim, north of Mount Gaash.

All that generation also were gathered to their fathers; and there arose another generation after them who did not know the Lord, nor yet the work which He had done for Israel. Then the sons of Israel did evil in the sight of the Lord, and served the Baals, and they forsook the Lord, the God of their fathers, who had brought them out of the land of Egypt, and followed other gods from among the gods of the peoples who were around them, and bowed themselves down to them; thus they provoked the Lord to anger. So they forsook the Lord and served Baal and the Ashtaroth.

The anger of the Lord burned against Israel, and He gave them into the hands of plunderers who plundered them; and He sold them into the hands of their enemies around them, so that they could no longer stand before their enemies. Wherever they went, the hand of the Lord was against them for evil, as the Lord had spoken and as the Lord had sworn to them, so that they were severely distressed.

Then the Lord raised up judges who delivered them from the hands of those who plundered them. And yet they did not listen to their judges, for they played the harlot after other gods and bowed themselves down to them. They turned aside quickly from the way in which their fathers had walked in obeying the commandments of the Lord; they did not do as their fathers. When the Lord raised up judges for them, the Lord was with the judge and delivered them from the hand of their enemies all the days of the judge; for the Lord was moved to pity by their groaning because of those who oppressed and afflicted them. But it came about when the judge died, that they would turn back and act more corruptly than their fathers, in following other gods to serve them and to bow down to them; **they did not abandon their practices or their stubborn ways.**

So the anger of the Lord burned against Israel, and He said, 'Because this nation has transgressed My covenant which I commanded their fathers, and has not listened to My voice, I also will no longer drive out before them any of the nations which Joshua left when he died, in order to test Israel by them, whether they will keep the way of the Lord to walk in it as their fathers did, or not.' So the Lord allowed those nations to remain, not driving them out quickly; and He did not give them into the hand of Joshua." (Judges 2:6-23)

After Judges, Kings led Israel

After the judges, the Israelites wanted to be just like all the other nations.



So, they asked Samuel, God's prophet, for a king to fight their battles for them. They rejected God as king. The Lord was unhappy with this, since He was their king. Yet God let them have a king (1 Sa 8:1-8), so that they would have to suffer what it was like to have a human king instead of God.

1. Saul was mighty, but would not serve God with a whole heart

God chose Saul to be Israel's first human king (all of the kings were chosen by God, or supposed to be chosen by God, not men). After Saul was anointed king by Samuel the prophet, the Spirit of God came upon him mightily. By this mighty power, he won his first battle over the Ammonites (1 Sa 9-11). But Saul began to sin greatly. For example:

(a) He would not keep commands

Under pressure of war, Saul himself offered the sacrifice to God, but he was previously told to wait for Samuel to do it (1 Sa 10:8). So God began to take the kingdom away from him to give it to a man after His own heart, David, the son of Jesse (1 Sa 13), a man who would obey Him.

(b) He would not completely do God's will

Later, God told Saul to completely destroy the Amalekites (1 Sa 15). But Saul kept some of the spoil and their king alive. When Samuel confronted Saul for this sin, he gave an unacceptable excuse and said that the spoil was for sacrificing to God. Samuel said, "**Has the Lord as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to heed than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of divination, and insubordination is as iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of the Lord, He has also rejected you from being king**" (1 Sa 15:22, 23).

2. David would serve God with a whole heart, but still sin

God told Samuel to anoint David, the youngest son of Jesse, the Bethlehemite to be king in place of Saul, because David was after God's own heart (1 Sa 13:14). Afterward, the Spirit of God came upon David mightily (1 Sa 16). But David would have to wait many years to become king over all of Israel, until after Saul died. Below are two major events from David's life.

(a) David killed Goliath

David killed Goliath, the giant who defied Israel and her God. Goliath was over nine feet tall. He was the Philistines' champion warrior. And when king Saul and the Israelites were preparing to fight the Philistines, Goliath taunted them, saying, "**I defy the ranks of Israel this day; give me a man that we may fight together.**" (1 Sa 17:10). But no one would fight Goliath. When David heard about Goliath, he went after him in the name of the Lord, saying, "**You come to me with a sword, a spear, and a javelin, but I come to you in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have taunted. This day the Lord will deliver you up into my hands, and I will strike you down and remove your head from you**" (1 Sa 17:45, 46). So David ran quickly toward the battle line, took a rock out of his bag, and slung it at Goliath, hitting him in his forehead. Goliath fell dead, and David cut off his head. A great victory was brought about through the mighty Spirit of God that rested on David. But when the women sang for joy over this victory, Saul became angry because they gave more honor to David in their singing than they gave to Saul. Therefore, Saul opposed David for years and tried to kill him several times. But the Lord delivered David out of all of his troubles with Saul. Eventually, Saul and his outstanding son, Jonathan, David's brother in heart, died in battle (1 Sa 17:48-chapt. 31). Then David formally became king, first over the tribe of Judah, then seven years later over all Israel (2 Sa 5:3).

(b) David committed adultery and murder

God gave Israel many victories through David. But David hurt himself and God's people by sinning with another man's wife, Bathsheba. David saw her from his rooftop while she was bathing. He decided to take her and have relations with her. Then, because he had gotten her pregnant, he had her husband killed on the battle front. God was greatly displeased with David. He confronted him in public through Nathan the prophet about his sins. Then David repented and God forgave him, but God still punished him very severely for his wicked sins of adultery and murder (2 Sa 11-20).

3. Solomon was wise, but deference to his wives' idols divided Israel

When David grew old, before he died, with difficulty and opposition, he appointed his son Solomon as king (1 Ki 1:28-40). God blessed Solomon with great wisdom and riches, like no other ever had (1 Ki 3). Below are three major events from Solomon's life.

(a) Solomon built The Temple

Solomon built the first Temple in Jerusalem, yet it was David's idea, and so David prepared many things to help his son build this temple. It took Solomon 11 years to finish it (1 Ki 6-9).

(b) The Queen of Sheba tested him

When the queen of Sheba heard about the fame of Solomon concerning the things of the Lord, she was curious and came with a very large group of her people to see if the report was true. She spoke to Solomon about all that was in her heart (1 Ki 10:1, 2). Then she tested him with difficult questions. Solomon proved beyond her expectations that God had blessed him with such great wisdom and riches, for when she perceived everything around Solomon and his wisdom, there was no more spirit in her, and she said, **"It was a true report which I heard in my own land about your words and your wisdom. Nevertheless I did not believe the reports, until I came and my eyes had seen it. And behold, the half was not told me. You exceed in wisdom and prosperity the report**

which I heard. How blessed are your men, how blessed are these your servants who stand before you continually and hear your wisdom. Blessed be the Lord your God who delighted in you to set you on the throne of Israel; because the Lord loved Israel forever, therefore He made you king, to do justice and righteousness" (1 Ki 10:6-9). Then she gave Solomon very precious gifts, especially many spices never equaled again in Israel (1 Ki 10:10).

(c) Solomon's sin split Israel into two kingdoms

Solomon's sin of idolatry divided Israel into two kingdoms. When Solomon grew old, because he had married foreign women, even women from Moab (1 Ki 11:1, 2), his heart was drawn away from God to serve their idols. The Lord commanded him not to go after other gods (1 Ki 11:9, 10). And before there was a king in Israel, Moses laid out one of the rules for the king, saying, **"He [the king] shall not multiply wives for himself"** (De 17:17). But Solomon multiplied wives. He had 700 of them and 300 concubines (1 Ki 11:3). So Solomon did not listen to the Lord's word against multiplying wives or idolatry. Because of this, God divided Israel into two kingdoms. Sin can cause division among brethren, not unity. Ten of the twelve tribes of Israel left the house of David to create the Northern kingdom based in Samaria. Two tribes, Benjamin and Judah, were left in the Southern kingdom to be ruled by David's household in Jerusalem (1 Ki 11-13; 2 Chron 11:1, 12).

Many Kings Ruled both Kingdoms

Most, if not all, of the kings in the Northern kingdom were evil. For example, Ahab and his wife Jezebel were idolaters, murderers, and covetous.

The Kings of the Northern Kingdom [ISRAEL]

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Jereboam 1 Ki 12:19 - 14:20 | 11. Jehoahaz 2 Ki 13:1-9 |
| 2. Nadab 1 Ki 15:25-32 | 12. Joash (Jehoash) 2 Ki 13:10-13 |
| 3. Baasha 1 Ki 15:33 - 16:7 | 13. Jeroboam II 2 Ki 14:23-29 |
| 4. Elah 1 Ki 16:8-14 | 14. Zechariah 2 Ki 15:8-12 |
| 5. Zimri 1 Ki 16:15-20 | 15. Shallum 2 Ki 15:13-16 |
| 6. Omri 1 Ki 16:21-28 | 16. Menahem 2 Ki 15:17-22 |
| 7. Ahab 1 Ki 16:29 - 22:40 | 17. Pekahiah 2 Ki 15:23-26 |
| 8. Ahaziah 1 Ki 22:51 - 2 Ki 1 | 18. Pekah 2 Ki 15:27-31 |
| 9. Joram (Jehoram) 2 Ki 3 - 9:26 | 19. Hoshea 2 Ki 17:1-4 |
| 10. Jehu 2 Ki 9 - 10 | |

The Southern kingdom had some good kings. For example, Jehoshaphat, Josiah, and Hezekiah all set their heart to serve the Lord. But even the Southern kingdom had evil kings, like Manasseh. He was one of the most wicked rulers that ever lived. He ruled for over 50 years in Jerusalem (1 Ki 13-2 Chron). God said that Manasseh seduced the people to do evil more than any other nation whom the Lord destroyed before the sons of Israel (2 Ki 21:9).

The Kings of the Southern Kingdom [JUDAH] Excluding the first three, Saul, David, and Solomon.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Rehoboam 1 Ki 12:1-24; 14:21-31 | 11. Jotham 2 Ki 15:32-38 |
| 2. Abijah (Abijam) 1 Ki 15:1-8 | 12. Ahaz 2 Ki 16 |
| 3. Asa 1 Ki 15:9-24 | 13. Hezekiah 2 Ki 18 - 20 |
| 4. Jehoshaphat 1 Ki 22:41-50 | 14. Manasseh 2 Ki 21:1-18 |
| 5. Jehoram 2 Ki 8:16-24 | 15. Amon 2 Ki 21:19-26 |
| 6. Ahaziah 2 Ki 8:25 - 9:29 | 16. Josiah 2 Ki 22 - 23:30 |
| 7. Queen Athaliah 2 Ki 11 | 17. Jehoahaz 2 Ki 23:31-34 |
| 8. Joash (Jehoash) 2 Ki 11:4 - 12:21 | 18. Jehoiakim 2 Ki 23:35 - 24:7 |
| 9. Amaziah 2 Ki 14:1-20 | 19. Jehoiachin 2 Ki 24:8-16 |
| 10. Uzziah (Azariah) 2 Ki 15:1-7 | 20. Zedekiah 2 Ki 24:17 - 25:7 |

God destroyed both kingdoms and deported them for their sins

(A) The Assyrians deported the Northern Kingdom, Israel [SAMARIA]

Because of all the evil kings and people in the Northern kingdom of Israel, God raised up the Assyrians to come and destroy and deport them from their kingdom, which was based in Samaria (2 Ki 17:1-18; 18:11). They were never brought back to Samaria (2 Ki 17:23).

(B) The Babylonians [Chaldeans] deported the Southern Kingdom, Judah [JERUSALEM]

Because of their sin, especially Manasseh's, God also decided to destroy and deport the Southern kingdom, which was based in Jerusalem. Manasseh's sins greatly provoked God (2 Ki 23:26, 27). So, God raised up king Nebuchadnezzar to take the Southern kingdom away to Babylon. But God eventually brought them back to Jerusalem (2 Chron 36:5-23).

The prophets warned Israel in the land of promise

The last section of books in the Old Testament is a collection of prophets' writings, such as Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Malachi. These prophets were sent by God to the Northern and the Southern kingdoms time and time again, to warn them of their impending doom, destruction, and deportation unless they repented of their sins. Finally, God had enough. For example, "**The LORD, the God of their fathers, sent word to them again and again by His messengers, because He had compassion on His people and on His dwelling place; but they continually mocked the messengers of God, despised His words and scoffed at His prophets, until the wrath of the LORD arose against His people, until there was no remedy**" (2 Chron 36:15, 16).

Note: The books of the prophets are fittingly placed after the books that speak of the Israelites' Promised Land happenings (Judges, Kings, and Chronicles).

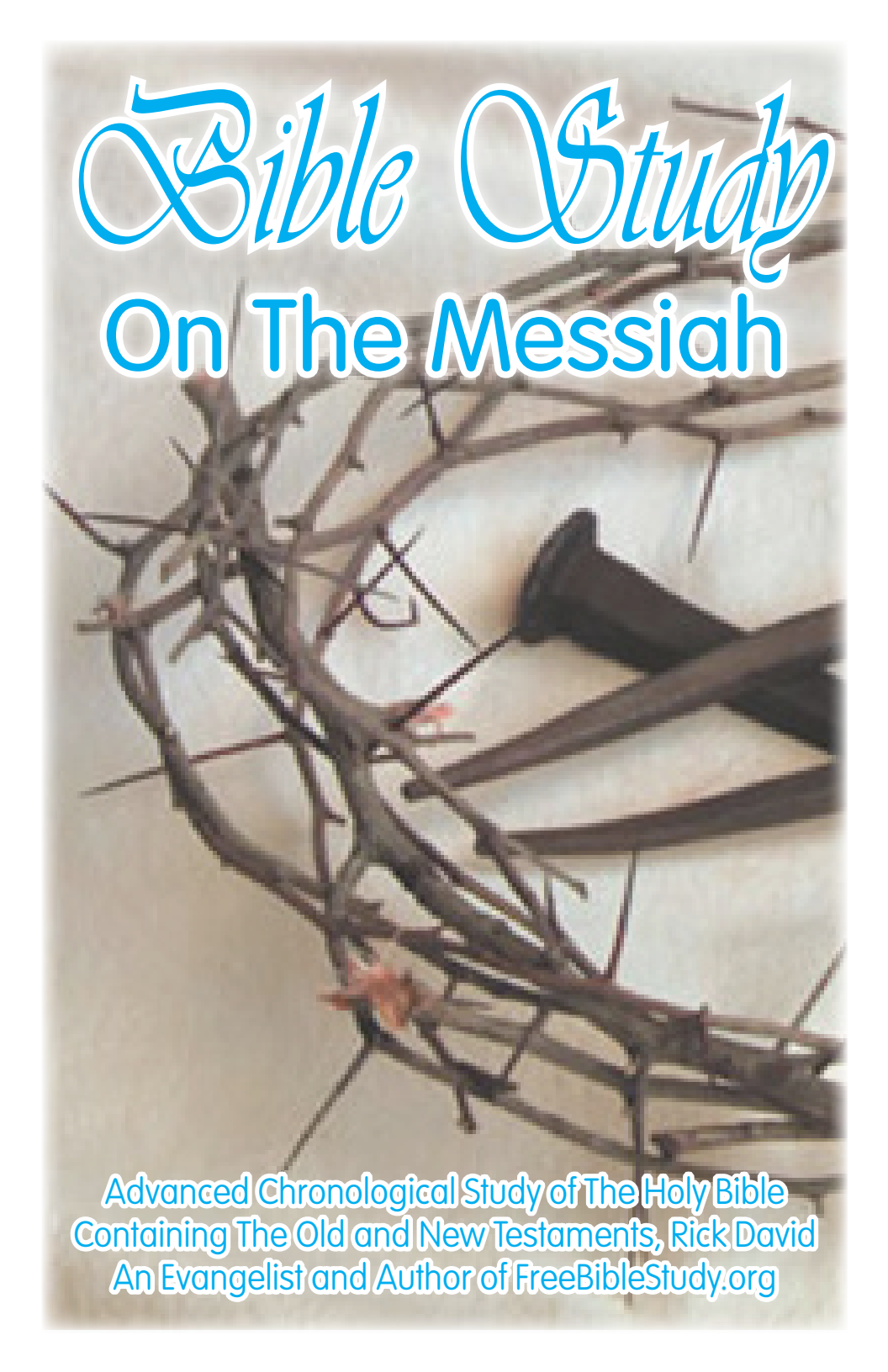
The prophets books in sequence sent & to whom sent

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Joel to Judah | 9. Jeremiah to Judah |
| 2. Jonah to Nineveh | 10. Ezekiel to captives in Babylon |
| 3. Amos to Israel | 11. Obadiah to Edom |
| 4. Hosea to Israel | 12. Daniel to Babylon |
| 5. Isaiah to Judah | 13. Habakkuk to Judah |
| 6. Micah to Judah | 14. Haggai to Judah |
| 7. Nahum to Nineveh | 15. Zechariah to Judah |
| 8. Zephaniah to Judah | 16. Malachi to Judah |

The 400 Yr. Intertestament Period

After the last prophet, Malachi, there was about a 400 year period of no prophets (none were recorded in Holy Scripture). It is considered to be the silent period. Then there was the prophet John the Baptist, who preceded the Messiah, Jesus Christ. Interestingly, Malachi, the last prophet, predicted that a great prophet would be sent to Israel before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord (Malachi 4:5, 6). John was the Elijah to come.

Now Complete the
TEST on the Old Testament

A crown of thorns made of dark, sharp, and tangled branches is the central focus of the image. It is set against a light, neutral background. In the center of the crown, a Bible is visible, its pages slightly open and showing a dark cover. The overall composition is symbolic, linking the crown of thorns to the Messiah.

Bible Study On The Messiah

Advanced Chronological Study of The Holy Bible
Containing The Old and New Testaments, Rick David
An Evangelist and Author of FreeBibleStudy.org

The Messiah was the seed of Abraham

Matthew 1

THE FULFILLMENT OF THE MOSAIC AGE [1-33 A.D.] Matthew 1-28

God's Son fulfilled The Mosaic Age, covenant, and Law

The first book in the New Testament, the gospel according to Matthew, records both (1) the fulfillment, that is **the completion** of the Mosaic Age and covenant (as do all four gospel accounts) and (2) **the beginning** of the Christian or Messianic Age or covenant. For example, Jesus Christ said, "Do not think that I came to abolish the Law [i.e. the Law of Moses] or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish [the Law of Moses and Prophets/the O.T.] but to fulfill" (Mt 5:17). To "fulfill" something means to complete it, in this case Moses' Law. Now the completion or fulfillment of the Mosaic Age happened approximately during the thirty-three year period that the Messiah was here on the earth, from His birth until His death on the cross. In thirty three A.D., the Christian Age or covenant started when Christ shed His blood for the sins of the world (**SEE** Lk 22:20; He 9:18).

So fittingly, this part of the course continues our chronological study of the Bible by teaching the fulfillment of the Mosaic Age and the beginning of the Messianic or Christian Age.

Note: Matthew [a.k.a. Levi] is 1 of 4 men who wrote a chronological account of the life of God's Son while He was here on the earth. Mark, Luke, & John are the other three. Matthew & John were also chosen by Christ to be eyewitness apostles of Him (Mt 9:9; Lk 6:12-16). So Matthew's account is an eyewitness account.



Matthew begins with genealogical evidence

Matthew wisely began his account of the life of Jesus by giving proof that He was directly related to King David, Judah, and Abraham. His first words in this book are: "The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham" (Mt 1:1).

There are very important reasons why it must be proved that Jesus is directly related to David and Abraham. First, the Old Testament foretold that the Messiah would be an offspring of these men (Ge 22:18; 2 Sa 7:16; Jn 7:42). Therefore it proves the fulfillment of the promise. Second, the Jews would need evidence to examine as to whether or not Jesus is the One. This would give them a chance to be convinced that Jesus is the Christ.

Now, in his account, Matthew listed several of the names which

occurred between Abraham to David, and from David to Jesus (Mt 1:2-16). He grouped them into three collections of 14 names. For example, and in summary, Matthew said, "Therefore all the generations from Abraham to David are fourteen generations; and from David to the deportation to Babylon fourteen generations; and from the deportation to Babylon to the time of Christ fourteen generations" (Mt 1:17). This genealogy is understood to be traced through the father's side, from Joseph back to Abraham.

Luke's genealogical account is uniquely different than Matthew's

When we compare Matthew's record of Christ's lineage to Luke's, we can see that Luke wrote his account with more depth. For example, he traced it all the way back to the first man, Adam (Lk 3:38), while Matthew only goes back to Abraham. He also began with what is understood to be some of the mother's lineage. For example, Luke calls Joseph the son of Eli, who was supposedly Mary's father (Lk 3:23). This would technically make Eli Joseph's father, but more specifically his father-in-law. Yet Matthew calls Joseph the son of Jacob (Mt 1:16). This would then be his real father. Additionally, within a segment of his genealogy, Luke lists several more names than Matthew.

And so, there is a lot of genealogical evidence to consider about Jesus being the Messiah. Yet even more amazing than Jesus fulfilling the genealogical prophecies about the Christ is all the other kinds of Messianic prophecies that He fulfilled as recorded in the gospel.

The Messianic Prophecy Chart

The gospel of Jesus Christ is a wonderful record of the fulfillment of Messianic prophecies. Remarkably, it brings to fruition all of the Old Testament prophecies about the Christ. As you can see, on the next page, in the *Messianic Prophecy Fulfillment Chart*, there are a lot of interesting prophecies from the Old Testament which Jesus fulfilled as recorded in the New Testament.

For example, there were foretellings of His mother, His birth, His relationship to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and even David. There were foretellings of His kingship, His place and time of birth, and even His birth from a virgin! There were foretellings of the slaughter of the infants, which was intended to kill Him, and His escape into Egypt. There were foretellings of His ministry in Galilee, Him being a prophet, His likeness to the priest Melchizedek, and His rejection by His own people, the Jews. There were foretellings of His kingly entry into the city of peace, Jerusalem, on the foal of a donkey, His betrayal by one of His close friends for thirty pieces of silver, and how that filthy lucre would be used by the Jewish leaders to purchase the potters field. There were foretellings of how the one who betrayed Him would need to be replaced, how false witnesses accused Him, and how He was mistreated, struck, spit upon, hated without cause, and crucified with sinners. There were foretellings of how His hands and feet would be pierced, how He would be reviled while on the cross, pierced in His side, and have His clothing divided amongst some of them by gambling! There were foretellings of Him praying for those who crucified Him, of the vinegar and gall given to Him to drink, and how not one bone of Him was broken. There were foretellings of His burial with a rich man, and His resurrection from the dead and ascension into heaven to be with the Father. How can anyone who truly understands the Old Testament, especially a Jew, not shiver or quake when he hears and understands these things?

MESSIANIC PROPHECY FULFILLMENT CHART

O.T. Prophecies	Arranged Chronologically	Fulfilled in the Gospel
Ge 3:15	He Would Be the "Offspring of a Woman"	Ga 4:4 (Lk 2:7; Re 12:5)
Ge 22:18 (Ge 12:3; 18:18)	The Promised Offspring of Abraham	Ac 3:25 (Mt 1:1; Lk 3:34)
Ge 17:19	The Promised Offspring to Isaac	Mt 1:2 (Lk 3:34)
Nu 24:17 (Ge 28:14)	The Promised Offspring of Jacob	Lk 3:34 (Mt 1:2)
Ge 49:10	He Will Descend from the Tribe of Judah	Lk 3:33 (Mt 1:2-3)
Isa 9:7 (Isa 11:1-5; 2 Sa 7:13)	He Would Be the Heir to the Throne of David	Mt 1:1 (Mt 1:6)
Mic 5:2	His Place of Birth	Mt 2:1 (Lk 2:4-7)
Da 9:25	His Time of Birth	Lk 2:1-7
Isa 7:14	He Would Be Born of A Virgin	Mt 1:18 (Lk 1:26-35)
Jer 31:15	The Slaughtering of Infants	Mt 2:16-18
Hos 11:1	His Escape into Egypt	Mt 2:14-15
Isa 9:1-2	His Ministry in Galilee	Mt 4:12-16
Dt 18:15	Him Being a Prophet	Jn 6:14 (Jn 1:45; Ac 3:19-26)
Ps 110:4	His Being a Priest, Like Melchizedek	He 6:20 (He 5:5-6; 7:15-17)
Isa 53:3 (Ps 2:2)	His Rejection by Jews	Jn 1:11 (Jn 5:43; Lk 4:29; 17:25; 23:18)
Isa 11:2-4 (Ps 45:7)	Some of His Characteristics	Lk 2:52 (Lk 4:18)
Zec 9:9 (Isa 62:11)	His Triumphal Entry	Jn 12:13-14 (Mt 21:1-11; Jn 12:12)
Ps 41:9	His Betrayal by a Friend	Mk 14:10 (Mt 26:14-16; Mk 14:43-45)
Zec 11:12-13	He Was Sold for Thirty Pieces of Silver	Mt 26:15 (Mt 27:3-10)
Zec 11:13	The Money Returned for a Potter's Field	Mt 27:3-10
Ps 109:7-8	Judas's Position to Be Taken by Another	Ac 1:16-20
Ps 27:12 (Ps 35:11)	False Witnesses Accuse Him	Mt 26:60-61
Isa 53:7 (Ps 38:13-14)	He Was Silent When Accused	Mt 26:62-63 (Mt 27:12-14)
Isa 50:6	He Was Struck and Spit on	Mk 14:65 (Mk 15:17; Jn 19:1-3; 18:22)
Ps 69:4 (Ps 109:3-5)	He Was Hated without Cause	Jn 15:23-25
Isa 53:4-6, 12	He Suffered in the Place of Someone else	Mt 8:16-17 (Ro 4:25; 1Co 15:3)
Isa 53:12	He Was Crucified with Sinners	Mt 27:38 (Mk 15:27-28; Lk 23:33)
Ps 22:16 (Zec 12:10)	His Hands and Feet Pierced	Jn 20:27 (Jn 19:37; 20:25-26)
Ps 22:6-8	He Was Mocked and Insulted	Mt 27:39-44 (Mk 15:29-32)
Ps 69:21	He Was Given Gall and Vinegar	Jn 19:29 (Mt 27:34, 48)
Ps 22:8	He Hears Prophetic Words Repeated in Mockery	Mt 27:43
Ps 109:4 (Isa 53:12)	He Prays for His Enemies	Lk 23:34
Zec 12:10	His Side Was Pierced	Jn 19:34
Ps 22:18	The Soldiers Cast Lots for His Clothes	Mk 15:24 (Jn 19:24)
Ps 34:20 (Ex 12:46)	Not a Bone of Him Was Broken	Jn 19:33
Isa 53:9	He Was Buried with/by a Rich Man	Mt 27:57-60
Ps 16:10	He Was Resurrected	Mt 28:9 (Lk 24:36-48; Mt 16:21)
Ps 68:18	He Ascended Back into Heaven with the Father	Lk 24:50-51 (Ac 1:9)

CHRIST ALWAYS EXISTS

1. He Is Eternally the Same: "Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today, yes and forever" (He 13:8).
2. He Had No Beginning: Jesus Christ is like Melchizedek, who was: "Without father, without mother, without genealogy, having neither beginning of days nor end of life, but made like the Son of God, he abides a priest perpetually" (He 7:3).
3. His Activities Are Eternal: "But as for you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, too little to be among the clans of Judah, from you One will go forth for Me to be ruler in Israel. His goings

forth are from long ago, from the days of eternity" (Mic 5:2).

4. He Existed before Abraham: "Jesus said to them, 'Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was born, I am'" (Jn 8:58).

5. He Was before Creation: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God (Jn 1:1). And now, glorify Thou Me together with Thyself, Father, with the glory which I had with Thee before the world was" (Jn 17:5).

Note: With permission, chart adapted by Patrick David Yanello from the Thompson Chain Reference Bible (page 1567-1570), Copyright 1983, B.B. Kirkbride Bible Co., Inc., Zondervan Bible Publishers, New International Version Copyright 1978 by the New York International Bible Society. The Preexistent Christ section adapted (page 1589).

The Messiah was born of a virgin

Matthew 1, 2

“A virgin will be with child” Isaiah 7:14

“Now the birth of Jesus Christ was as follows. When His mother Mary had been betrothed to Joseph, before they came together she was found to be with child by the Holy Spirit” (Mt 1:18). Luke explained further that an angel, Gabriel, was sent to Mary to tell her that she would be with child by the Holy Spirit. When Mary asked Gabriel how she could become pregnant, since she was a virgin, he answered, “The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; and for that reason the holy Child shall be called the Son of God. For nothing will be impossible with God” (Lk 1:34, 35, 37). Because this Child would be given to Mary by an impossible way, by the miraculous power of the Holy Spirit, and not by the physical power of man, not by flesh but by Spirit, He would be called the Son of God. As we continue to study Matthew’s account, it becomes more and more evident that Jesus is God’s Son.

Joseph was afraid to take Mary as his wife

When Joseph found out that Mary was pregnant, he must have thought that she sinned by having sexual relations with another man. So he did not want to take her as his wife. He was going to quietly put her away from their



Ramat Rahel Stone Manger with a Child Named Mark
(A manger is an animal feeding box, made of stone or wood.)

betrothal. But an angel persuaded Joseph to take Mary as his wife. “An angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, ‘Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife; for that which has been conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit. And she will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Jesus, for it is He who will save His people from their sins.’ Now all this took place that what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet [Isaiah] might be fulfilled, saying, ‘BEHOLD, THE VIRGIN SHALL BE WITH CHILD, AND SHALL BEAR A SON, AND THEY SHALL CALL HIS NAME IMMANUEL,’ which translated means, ‘GOD WITH US’ ” (Mt 1:20-23).

Isaiah spoke this prophecy to the Israelites, while they were in the Promised Land, hundreds of years before they came to be fulfilled (Is 7:14). Luke also said that this child would be called “the Son of the Most High”, and that He would be given the throne of “His father David” (Lk 1:32). This helped make certain two things. That Jesus would be called God’s Son. That Jesus’ father was also David, giving more evidence to prove that Jesus was a descendant of David. Now Joseph took Mary as his wife, but he had no relations with her until after the child was born (Mt 1:24, 25).

Mary laid Him in a manger, and shepherds came to see Him

Matthew records the birth of the Son of God happening while Mary and Joseph were at Bethlehem, registering for a census that was commanded by the governor of Syria. They had to travel to Bethlehem because Joseph was a descendant of David, and Bethlehem was a city of David. When there, they found no room at the inn. So when Mary gave birth to Jesus, she wrapped Him in swaddling clothes and laid Him in a manger (Lk 2:4-7). At night, out in the nearby fields, an angel appeared to some shepherds. He announced to them that: **"there has been born for you a Savior, who is Christ the Lord"** (Lk 2:11). And as a sign for them, they would find a baby wrapped in clothes and lying in a manger. They went and found Him just as the angel said. They spoke about Him and praised God for what they had heard and saw (Lk 2:8-20).

Wise men worshiped Jesus

After some time, wise men saw the Messiah's star in the East and wanted to come and worship Him (Mt 2:1, 2). They called Him the King of the Jews. They went to Jerusalem and asked about Him. King Herod was troubled when heard about this and asked the chief priests and scribes where the Messiah would be born (Mt 2:4). They quoted to him from the prophet, Micah, saying, **"AND YOU, BETHLEHEM, LAND OF JUDAH, ARE BY NO MEANS LEAST AMONG THE LEADERS OF JUDAH; FOR OUT OF YOU SHALL COME FORTH A RULER, WHO WILL SHEPHERD MY PEOPLE ISRAEL"** (Mt 2:6). King Herod told the wise men where they could find the Child and to report back to him when they found Him. Herod was

pretending that he wanted to worship the Child. But instead he wanted to kill Him. The wise men went to Bethlehem, led by the star, and found the Child in a house, not the manger, with His mother. They fell down and worshiped Him, and gave Him presents of gold, frankincense, and myrrh (Mt 2:9-11). **[The Messiah is worthy of worship because He is the Son of God.]** Then the wise men were warned by God in a dream not to return to Herod (Mt 2:12). Herod was enraged over this, and killed all the male children in Bethlehem. But not Jesus, for He had already departed.

The Messiah's childhood

Because Herod wanted to kill the Child, an angel told Joseph: **"Arise and take the Child and His mother, and flee to Egypt, and remain there until I tell you; for Herod is going to search for the Child to destroy Him"** (Mt 2:13). They stayed in Egypt until Herod died. This fulfilled what was spoken by the prophet Hosea: **"OUT OF EGYPT DID I CALL MY SON"** (Mt 2:15, 16).

Luke records the only other details about the Messiah's childhood. For example, when He was twelve, He went to a feast in Jerusalem with His family (Lk 2:41-52). And after this feast, **"He went down with them [His parents] and came to Nazareth, and He continued in subjection to them... And Jesus kept increasing in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and men"** (Lk 2:51, 52). And so, Jesus spent His childhood obeying vs. rebelling against His parents, Mary and Joseph. He grew in wisdom vs. foolishness. He grew in stature vs. remaining a child; he matured. And He grew in favor (grace) with God and men, not wrath! These are four excellent goals for children. Now Jesus had a cousin, John, who, at some point, was going prepare the Jews to receive Jesus as the Christ.

John prepared the way for the Messiah

Matthew 3

The ministry of John

It is very important to understand the work of John the Baptist because it relates directly to the Messiah.



The Jordan River by Bethany beyond Jordan, Near Judea

1. To prepare Israel for the Messiah

"Now in those days John the Baptist came, preaching in the wilderness of Judea, saying, 'Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.' For this is the one referred to by Isaiah the prophet, saying, 'The voice of one crying in the wilderness, make ready the way of the Lord, make His paths straight!' " (Mt 3:1-3) John said of himself: "I am not the Christ, but I have been sent before Him" (Jn 3:28). Luke said John was: "The prophet of the Most High; For you will go on before the Lord to prepare His ways" (Lk 1:76). "And he will turn many of the sons of Israel back to the Lord their God. It is he who will go as a forerunner before Him in the spirit and power of Elijah, to turn the hearts of the fathers back to the children, and the disobedient to the attitude of the righteous, so as **to make ready a people prepared for the Lord**" (Lk 1:16,17).

John would be like the O.T. prophet Elijah, who worked miracles to turn Israel back to God. But John did no miracles. His power was spoken of to be like Elijah because of the mighty spiritual power of God which was working in him to preach and to turn people to the Lord; helping them to have the right attitude. Later, Jesus would confirm that John was the Elijah to come (READ Mt 17:10-13).

2. To cause Israel to repent and be baptized to receive the forgiveness of their sins

God commanded John to preach a water baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins (Jn 1:33; Lk 3:1-3; Mt 3:5, 6). So the people had to come to John in the wilderness of Judea to confess their sins and to be baptized by him in the Jordan River for the remission of their sins.

3. To sharply rebuke [scold] the different leading religious parties in Israel

"But when he [John] saw many of the Pharisees and the Sadducees coming for baptism at the Jordan in Judea, he said to them, 'You brood of vipers, who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? Therefore bring forth fruit in keeping with repentance; and do not suppose that you can say to yourselves, 'We have Abraham for our father'; for I say to you, that God is able from these stones to raise up children to Abraham. And the axe is already laid at the root of the trees; every tree therefore that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire' " (Mt 3:7-10). For some very good reasons, John told the two leading religious parties in Israel, the Pharisees and the Sadducees, to change or perish. Obviously, John would not be in good favor with them, and eventually, neither would Jesus.

4. To teach Israel how to live right

"The multitudes were questioning him, saying, 'Then what shall we do?' " (Lk 3:10). And so, depending on their situation in life, John would tell them what they should do. For example, he told those who had extra food and clothing to share it with those who had none (Lk 3:11). In other words, be charitable. He told the tax collectors to not ask the people for more money than what they had been ordered to collect (Lk 3:12, 13). This would keep them from greed. He told the soldiers to not use force to take money from others, to not accuse anyone falsely, and to be satisfied with their wages (Lk 3:14). In other words, they must not abuse people with their policing power and authority and they must be content with their pay.

5. To baptize the Messiah

"Then Jesus arrived from Galilee at the Jordan coming to John, to be baptized by him. But John tried to prevent Him, saying, 'I have need to be baptized by You, and do You come to me?' But Jesus answering said to him, 'Permit it at this time; for in this way it is fitting for us to fulfill all righteousness.' After Jesus was baptized by John, He went up immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened, and he saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, and coming upon Him, and behold, a voice out of the heavens, saying, 'This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well-pleased' " (Mt 3:13-17). God told John the Baptist, saying, "He upon whom you see the Spirit descending and remaining upon Him, this is the one who baptizes in the Holy Spirit... And I [John] have seen, and have borne witness that this is the Son of God" (Jn 1:33, 34). Mark also bore witness like John, saying in his account, "The beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God" (Mk 1:1).



Conclusion

John the Baptist was an outstanding prophet. He prepared Israel for the Messiah. He publicly stood up against the religious parties of his day. Through his teaching, God caused many people to repent and be baptized in water for the forgiveness of their sins. John had the privilege to baptize the Messiah in the Jordan River. Afterward, he saw the Holy Spirit in the form of a dove come down on Jesus and he heard the voice of the Father speak well of Him. John testified that Jesus is the Son of God. John fulfilled his mission as the Elijah to come (Malachi 4:5; Mt 17:10-13). But he also had one more purpose, to be martyred for opposing the marriage of King Herod (Mk 6:18, 25). It was adultery; more specifically it was an adulterous marriage union. Do you understand this kind of adultery? [In the repentance lesson, there is more information about marrying into adultery.]

The five baptisms in the N.T.

With John "the Baptist" (he was the first to baptize), it seems fitting now to briefly put his baptism into perspective along with the other kinds baptisms mentioned in the N.T.

1. John's Baptism [water]

It is one of two water baptisms in the N.T. When Paul, an apostle of Christ, was speaking to some of John's disciples, he told them that since Christ had come, they now needed to be baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ. So, even though they were already baptized into John's baptism, into his name so to speak, they still had to be re-baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus Christ (SEE Ac 18:24-26; 19:1-7). Therefore, John's baptism is no longer to be taught, it is no longer valid.

2. Baptism in the Name of the Lord [water]

As pointed out above, now that Christ has come, we are to be water baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ. Actually, it is understood that this baptism is to be done in the name of the Father, the name of the Son, and the name of the Holy Spirit (SEE Mt 28:19), three persons, not just in Jesus' name only. Like John's baptism, it must also be preceded by repentance of one's sins, and it is to be done for the forgiveness of sins and to receive the gift of the Holy Spirit, the indwelling Person of God (SEE Ac 2:38). This is now the only baptism which we must obey and the only one which a baptizer can administer.

3. A 'Life Experience' Baptism [a trial]

Jesus was baptized in water by John. But after that experience, Jesus said that he had a baptism to undergo (SEE Lk 12:50). He was referring to His suffering at the hands of the Jews and Gentiles and His death on the cross.

4. Holy Spirit Baptism [spirit]

John the Baptist said that the Messiah would baptize with the Holy Spirit and with fire (SEE Lk 3:16). Evidently, these are two types of baptism, Spirit and fire. In the very next verse (vs. 17), John illustrated further what he meant by "fire" baptism when he said that Jesus would gather his wheat into his barn, but burn up the chaff with "unquenchable fire". Clearly, hell is a baptism of fire! So the baptism of fire here that John is talking about is the eternal baptism in the lake of fire (SEE Re 21:8). Now the baptism of the Holy Spirit that John also spoke about here is the same thing that Jesus spoke about to his apostles (Ac 1:4-8), and that Joel prophesied about in the Old Testament (Joel 2:28-31). It was administered by God from heaven to usher in the Christian Age (SEE Ac 2:1-21: Ac 10) and also only by the laying on of the twelve apostles' hands (SEE Ac 8:14-18), including Paul's hands (Ac 19:6).

Note: Many confuse this "baptism" of the Holy Spirit with the "indwelling" of the Holy Spirit in the heart one who believes. At the end of this course, in the baptism study, there is more information about this. For now just be aware that many are confused or mistaken about the different baptisms in the New Testament and that you need to more perfectly learn the truth about these things or else you will be misled yourself to your own shame.

5. Fire Baptism [hell] See #4 above for an explanation.

Note: Beware of those who claim to have been baptized with fire. There is a big difference between being baptized with fire and being baptized with the Holy Spirit, an eternal difference. The apostles were not baptized with fire (Ac 2). They were baptized by God with the Holy Spirit. Cornelius was not baptized with fire. He was baptized by God with the Holy Spirit (Ac 10). Likewise, Jesus was not baptized with a dove. He was baptized by God with the Holy Spirit.

The Devil tempted the Messiah

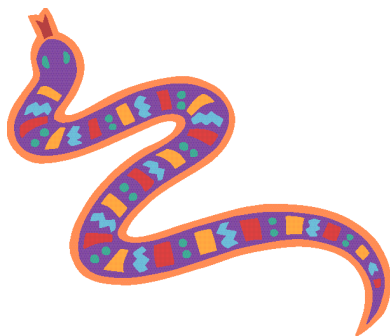
Matthew 4

Satan tempted Jesus when He was weak

After Jesus was baptized by John in the Jordan River, he was led into the wilderness by the Holy Spirit to be tempted by the Devil. Yet, Jesus resisted and overcame the Devil and his temptations by using the word of God. Therefore, Jesus did not sin. For example,

"And after He had fasted forty days and forty nights, He then became hungry. And the tempter came and said to Him, 'If You are the Son of God, command that these stones become bread.' But He answered and said, 'It is written, 'MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF GOD' " (Mt 4:1-4).

Now the Devil knew that Jesus was the Son of God, because he said, **"If You are the Son of God"**. So Satan tempted Jesus to use the miraculous power that Son of God would have to turn the stones into bread. But obviously, since this was the Devil's temptation, Jesus resisted it with a fitting verse from the word of God. If there is anything that we can learn from this, it is to never do what the Devil tempts us to do, even when we are at our weakest moment and in need. It would be a sin to enter into the temptation. Consider Job. When he was at his weakest moment--all his children were recently killed, and his businesses were ruined-- he was tempted to quit serving God. But instead, in spite of his great suffering and enormous grief, he grew strong in faith, worshiped the Lord, and blessed Him (Job 1:20-22). We know, that through all of this, Satan was tempting Job to sin against God.



Satan tempted Jesus to misapply the word of God

After Jesus quoted and applied a Scripture to resist the Devil's first temptation, Satan tried to do it too! But his application was sinful. For example, **"Then the devil took him into the holy city; and he had Him stand on the pinnacle of the temple, and said to Him, 'If you are the Son of God throw Yourself down; for it is written, 'HE WILL GIVE HIS ANGELS CHARGE CONCERNING YOU'; and 'ON THEIR HANDS THEY WILL BEAR YOU UP, LEST YOU STRIKE YOUR FOOT AGAINST A STONE.'"** Jesus said to him, **"On the other hand, it is written, "YOU SHALL NOT PUT THE LORD YOUR GOD TO THE TEST"** (Mt 4:5-7). So here we can see that Satan could quote the word of God. But we can also see that he did not apply it properly, for he was tempting Jesus to misapply it, and therefore sin. Now it was true that God's angels would have kept Jesus from striking his foot on a stone, but it is also true that a person should not throw a boulder at himself and expect God to make it miss the target! A person would not only get hit with the stone, but he would also have an incorrect understanding of God and application of His word. Jesus knew that casting Himself down from a high place in order to get His Father's angelic

attention and help would be acting sinfully and foolishly. Jesus pointed out what specific sin it would be, that God must not be put to the test in that way. So we don't purposely drink poison, or purposely handle snakes, as some do, and then expect God to save us. It puts God to the test. Likewise, a child is not to put his parents to the test. It's sin.

Satan tempted Jesus with the things in the world

"Again, the devil took Him to a very high mountain, and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world, and their glory; and he said to Him, 'All these things will I give You, if You fall down and worship me.' Then Jesus said to him, 'Begone Satan! For it is written, 'YOU SHALL WORSHIP THE LORD YOUR GOD, AND SERVE HIM ONLY.' Then the devil left Him; and behold, angels came and began to minister to Him" (Mt 4:8-11). Jesus did not deny that Satan had the power to give him the things in this world. But Jesus absolutely denied the idea of worshiping him for the things in this world. This type of temptation led Jesus to tell Satan to leave because the Bible says to only worship God. But even when Jesus was sorely tempted these three times, we see that at some point, angels ministered to Him. He was refreshed. At some point, God will refresh us from all of our temptations as well, if we continue to resist them.

Now Luke adds this sobering detail to the story of the temptation of Christ. It serves as a warning to all of us. **"And when the devil had finished every temptation, he departed from Him until an opportune time"** (Lk 4:13). The Devil was not finished tempting the Son of God. So he will not give up tempting us either. He will come back when he sees a good opportunity to tempt us again.

Satan will tempt us like he tempted Jesus

1. He will tempt us when we are weak

Like Jesus, at certain times in our lives, we too can become very weak and needy. So we should prepare to defend ourselves during our weaknesses with a certain word of God. For example, someone is weak and therefore tempted to have sexual relations outside of wedlock. He needs to resist that temptation with this verse, "Marriage is to be held in honor among all,...for fornicators and adulterers God will judge" (He 13:4). Someone is weak and tempted to have an abortion. She needs to resist it with this Scripture, "You shall not murder" (Ex 20:13). Someone is weak and tempted to divorce her husband because of their finances. She needs to resist it this verse, "A wife is bound to her husband as long as he lives" (1 Cor 7:39). Someone is weak and is tempted to divorce his wife because he is not satisfied with her for some reason. He needs to resist this by saying, "The husband should not divorce his wife" (1 Cor 7:11). Someone is weak and therefore tempted to have sexual relations with a woman who is not his wife. He needs to resist it with this verse, "You shall not commit adultery (Ex 20:14). Or, "Drink water from your own cistern and fresh water from your own well" (Pr 5:15). Someone is weak and therefore tempted to kill himself because he cannot find a job. He needs to resist it, saying, "You shall not murder" (Ex 20:13). In every walk of life, for every man, woman, and child, there are times when we are weak. Therefore, we all need to quickly find a verse for our weakness and temptation, and use it immediately!

2. He will tempt us to misapply the word of God

Satan will tempt us to misapply certain verses in the Bible, just like he tried to do this with Jesus. For example, in the beginning, Satan tempted Eve to not apply the one and only commandment which was related to her receiving eternal life! Likewise, today, Satan is tempting someone to disregard the keeping of, or the proper application of, certain key commandments of Christ in order to receive eternal life. Satan will tempt someone to improperly apply the forgiving power of God, by encouraging him to sin, quoting a verse that indicates how forgiving God really is. He might say something like this: "It's okay. God's grace covers it", or "You need to understand God's grace", or "I don't think you understand God's grace" [Yet we know that God does not favor sin. He does not grace it. He only forgives it if we repent and separate from it. He is not permissive. His grace is not licentious (Jude 1:8).] There are many Satanic misapplications regarding the commandments of Christ, for repentance, baptism, confession, salvation, forgiveness of sins, worship, gifts of the Holy Spirit, etc. Yet, like Jesus, we should detect a misapplication of a commandment of God, and then use the word of God to correct it! We must learn how to refute incorrect applications of the word of God or else we will be overcome by them! This is Satan's purpose.

3. He will tempt us to avoid worshiping God

Satan wants to give us things to cause us to stop worshiping God, just like he tried to do with Jesus. The true reason for this is that Satan wants us to worship and serve him instead of God. He wants our attention, and he tries to get it with offering us things in the world. Yet Jesus showed us how to resist the distracting temptations of power, wealth, and material things, simply by putting the worship of God first (Mt 6:33). He did not let anything in the world keep Him from worshiping God and God only! Likewise, we must not be foolish and receive things in this world that will hinder or keep us from worshiping and serving the Lord first (Mt 6:33).

The Messiah chose twelve apostles

They were ordinary men

After the Messiah was tempted by the Devil, He settled in Capernaum of Galilee (Mt 4:14-16). There He saw two brothers, Peter and Andrew, casting a net into the sea of Galilee. "And He said to them, 'Follow Me, and I will make you fishers of men' " (Mt 4:19). Immediately they left their nets and began to follow Him (Mt 4:20).

Note: Evidently, Andrew first became aware of Jesus Christ when John the Baptist told him that Jesus was the Lamb of God. Then Andrew went to get his brother, Peter, saying, "We have found the Messiah" (Jn 1:41).

Jesus saw two other brothers, James and John, in a boat with their father, mending their nets. He called to them and immediately they left their boat and their father to follow Christ (Mt 4:21, 22). These specially chosen men began to give up everything they had in order to be with the Messiah while He was on the earth. Luke said that Peter, Andrew, James, and John were fishing partners (Lk 5:1-10). But now Jesus wanted these four fishermen to become fishers of men. He wanted them to make men into followers of Christ.

Later, Jesus saw Philip and said to him, "Follow Me" (Jn 1:43). Then Philip told Nathanael, "We have found Him of whom Moses in the Law and also the Prophets wrote, Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph" (Jn 1:45). After some time, Jesus saw Matthew [i.e. Levi] sitting in a tax collector's office. He said to Matthew, "Follow Me!" (Mt



Men fishing on the Sea of Galilee

9:9). He got up and followed Jesus. Some time later, after spending the whole night in prayer on a mountain, "He called His disciples to Him; and chose twelve of them, whom He also named as apostles" (Lk 6:13-16). Below are the names of the twelve.

1. Simon (a.k.a. Peter)
2. Andrew (Peter's brother)
3. James
4. John (James' brother)
5. Philip
6. Bartholomew
7. Matthew (a.k.a. Levi)
8. Thomas
9. James the son of Alphaeus
10. Simon the Zealot
11. Judas son of James
12. Judas Iscariot the traitor

The purpose of the apostles

Just like it was very important for Israel to understand the purpose of Moses and how he related to the old covenant, likewise it is very important for Christians to know the purpose of the apostles and how they relate to the new covenant, the gospel of Jesus Christ. When speaking of the apostles, common questions or problems arise,

like, "Are there any apostles today?" or "Can I be an apostle of Christ?" or "What was their purpose?" or "Can I do what the apostles could do?" Now understand the meaning and the purpose of the apostles of Christ.

They were Moses-like

First and foremost, it is understood that just like God chose Moses as His earthly authority to bring in the Mosaic Age and covenant (Moses' Law), Jesus chose twelve men as His authorities to usher in, to start the Christian Age or covenant (Christ's Law). So Jesus chose the apostles to be Moses-like. Moses was a prophet, a miracle worker, and a covenant bearer. Likewise, the apostles were prophets, miracle workers, and covenant bearers. Knowing this, it will set the proper stage for you to understand all of the other questions about their meaning and purpose, which is summed up in the following verse. **"And He appointed twelve, that they might [1] be with Him, and that He might [2] send them out to preach, and [3] to have authority to cast out demons" (Mk 3:14, 15).** And so we can see three reasons for their appointment.

1. To Be Eyewitnesses

They were appointed to be **"with Him"** on a daily basis while He was performing His ministry on earth. This would make them the most credible witnesses of His majesty. As Peter said about their apostleship, **"For we did not follow cleverly devised tales when we made known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but we were eyewitnesses of His majesty" (2 Pe 1:16).** So they were chosen to be eyewitnesses of Jesus Christ.

Who Was Eligible to Be an Apostle?

In order for a man to be an apostle, he had to be an eyewitness of Jesus Christ. This became evident when Judas Iscariot left the ministry. For example, "At this time Peter stood up in the midst of the brethren (a gathering of about one hundred and twenty persons was there together), and said, 'Brethren, the Scripture had to be fulfilled, which the Holy Spirit foretold by the mouth of David concerning Judas, who became a guide to those who arrested Jesus. For he was counted among us and received his share in this ministry. (Now this man acquired a field with the price of his wickedness, and falling headlong, he burst open in the middle and all his intestines gushed out. And it became known to all who were living in Jerusalem; so that in their own language that field was called Hakeldama, that is, Field of Blood.) For it is written in the book of Psalms, "LET HIS HOME/STEAD BE MADE DESOLATE, AND LET NO ONE DWELL IN IT"; and, "LET ANOTHER MAN TAKE HIS OFFICE." Therefore it is necessary that of the men who have accompanied us all the time that the Lord Jesus went in and out among us—beginning with the baptism of John until the day that He was taken up from us—**one of these must become a witness** with us of His resurrection.' So they put forward two men, Joseph called Barsabbas (who was also called Justus), and Matthias. And they prayed and said, 'You, Lord, who know the hearts of all men, show which one of these two You have chosen to occupy this ministry and apostleship from which Judas turned aside to go to his own place.' And they drew lots for them, and the lot fell to Matthias; and he was added to the eleven apostles" (Ac 1:15-26).

So to be an apostle, a man had to be with Jesus from the time of His baptism until the time that He was taken back into heaven, with one exception, Paul. We know for sure that Jesus, not man, personally chose Paul to be an apostle along with the twelve (Ga 1:1; Ac 9:3-6; 1 Co 15:8-10). Now Moses also worked closely with God to receive the old covenant to give to Israel. More than once, he was on the mountain with God. He met with God in the tent of meeting. And at the start, God appeared to him with the burning bush. So Moses was sort of an eye-witness authority as well. This is critical to establish a testimony.

2. To Be Preachers

They were appointed **"to preach"** about the kingdom of God with authority. [Now, by itself, with no context to further define its use, the word "apostle" means "one sent". But as used in the holy Scriptures, it takes on a whole new meaning, namely "a messenger sent with authority from the Lord Jesus Christ to establish the Christian doctrine or teachings"]. So the apostles were the authentic and authorized messengers of the Messiah and His message of salvation. Fittingly, before Jesus went back into heaven, He commanded them to: **"Go into all the world and preach the gospel to all creation" (Mk 16:15).**

So they were preachers, meaning they were to evangelize the world with the message of Christ. An evangelist is a herald who specializes in spreading the good news message all around, everywhere.

3. To Be Miracle Workers

Third, they were appointed **“to have authority”**, meaning miraculous power. Like Moses and Jesus, the apostles did miracles, signs, and wonders. Moses did miracles, signs, and wonders to prove that he was from God, that he had the authority to speak for God. Jesus did miracles, signs, and wonders to prove that He was from God, that He had the authority to speak for God. Likewise, God gave the apostles the same kind of authority to establish the new covenant in Christ.

They were given the highest position or calling in the kingdom, excepting God. **“And God has appointed in the church, first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, administrations, various kinds of tongues”** (1 Cor 12:28). Indeed, the apostles along with the prophets form the very foundation on which every Christian must be built: **“having been built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Christ Jesus Himself being the corner stone”** (Eph 2:20). Now if we are to be built, that is established, upon a foundation which has already been laid, meaning a teaching foundation, well then we cannot be in the foundation [the teaching]. That is to say we cannot be apostles and prophets. No one is to be built upon what we say, but on what the apostles and prophets have already said to us as written down in the Bible. They are the inspired authors and penmen of the New and the Old Testaments, not us. 59

Like the position of Moses, the position or gift of apostleship only lasted as long as those eligible or proving that calling lived. It lasted only during the establishment of the new covenant, roughly the first century A.D. [There is more teaching on the gift of apostleship and other spiritual gifts in *The Bible Study on the Greater Gifts*, *“Earnestly Desire the Greater Gifts”* (1 Cor 12:31), and in *The Bible Study on the Non-Teaching Gifts*, *“We Have Gifts that Differ”* (Ro 12:6).

So if anyone claims to be an apostle today, he is categorizing himself with a Moses, a Jesus, or one of the true apostles, Peter, Paul, James, etc., and this simply is not true. I urge you to beware of anyone who claims to be an apostle today. God is not calling anyone else to start a new covenant, nor is He putting anyone else into the foundation which He has already built. Beware! Jesus said to the church in Ephesus, **“I know... that you cannot tolerate evil men, and you put to the test those who call themselves apostles, and they are not, and you found them to be false”** (Re 2:2). Jesus praised them for this. Will you receive the same praise? It is **“evil”** for men to **“call themselves apostles”**.

Conclusion

Jesus called some very ordinary men to become his close companions. In the eyes of the world they were not much: four of them were simply fisherman, one was a tax collector, whom people hated, and the rest were basically unknown and not recorded as being in any prominence or high up in any religious circles. Jesus appointed them to be with Him, to go out and preach about the kingdom of God, and to have authority. After a few more years, the twelve would fulfill their calling as apostles, except for Judas Iscariot who betrayed the Messiah.

The Messiah preached the gospel with power

Matthew 4-25

As one having authority

After His baptism, "Jesus began to preach and say, '**Repent**, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand' " (Mt 4:17), and "**believe in the gospel**" (Mk 1:15). So, repentance and faith toward God were the very first recorded teachings which Jesus preached after His baptism, after His ministry began. Yet, power accompanied his preaching; He healed every kind of disease and sickness among the people. So crowds followed Him and He taught them many things (Mt 4:23-25). He taught them who is truly blessed, which goes against the world's thinking about it (Mt 5:1-12); How to be a light so that men would glorify God (Mt 5:13-16); That He was here to fulfill (complete) the Mosaic Age Law and Prophets, the Old Testament (Mt 5:17-19); That they needed to do better than the two leading religious parties who were falling short in the sight of God. He said, "**Unless your righteousness surpasses that of the scribes and Pharisees, you shall not enter the kingdom of heaven**" (Mt 5:20). Evidently, they were not doing enough right to be saved. He taught them the truth about murder, unrighteous anger, adultery, divorce and remarriage, oaths, vengeance, sharing, prayer, wealth, judging, and a whole lot more (Mt 5:17-7:29). "**The result was that when Jesus had finished these words, the multitudes were amazed at His teaching, for He was teaching them as one having authority, and not as their scribes**" (Mt 7:28, 29). Next, consider His "**authority**", meaning His power.

Power [authority] to Heal Lepers

A leper came to Jesus and said, " '**Lord, if You are willing, You can make me clean. And He stretched out His hand and touched him, saying, 'I am willing; be cleansed.'** And immediately his leprosy was cleansed" (Mt 8:2, 3).



Power to Heal Paralytics

A soldier asked Jesus to heal his paralyzed servant, who was lying in bed in great pain. He said, "**Lord, I am not worthy for you to come under my roof, but just say the word, and my servant will be healed.**" (Mt 8:8) This man was not an Israelite, yet Jesus said, "**I have not found such great faith with anyone in Israel**" (Mt 8:10). Israel lacked faith in God and His Christ.

Power to Cure Sickness / Fever

Peter's mother-in-law was lying sick in bed. Jesus touched her hand, and the fever left her. Then she arose and waited on Him (Mt 8:14, 15). And many sick people were brought to Him and He healed them all in order to fulfill what Isaiah spoke about Him, saying, "**HE HIMSELF TOOK OUR INFIRMITIES, AND CARRIED AWAY OUR DISEASES**" (Mt 8:17).

Power to Live Sacrificially

When some claimed they wanted to follow Jesus, He made sacrificial statements to them. He said that He did not have a place to stay, indicating that His life at that point was not about having all the physical comforts of a home. He said that following Him now meant that they would have to give up some family responsibilities, like letting the spiritually dead bury their own dead (Mt 8:19-22).

Power to Control Nature

Later, Jesus got into a boat with His disciples. A storm arose and began to cover the boat with water. Jesus was asleep. The disciples said, **"Save us, Lord; we are perishing"** (Mt 8:25). Jesus said, **"Why are you timid, you men of little faith?"** (Mt 8:26). Then He rebuked the winds and the sea, and it became calm. The men marveled, saying, **"What kind of a man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey Him"** (Mt 8:27).

Another time, Jesus sent the disciples ahead of Him in a boat. When the boat was far away, between 3 and 6 a.m., Jesus came to them, walking on the water. They thought it was a ghost and cried out for fear. But Jesus told them who He was. Then Peter asked if He could walk to Jesus on the water. Jesus told him to come, so Peter stepped out. After looking at the waves, Peter became afraid and started to sink. Jesus stretched out His hand and saved him. When they got into the boat, the disciples worshiped Him, saying, **"You are certainly God's Son!"** (Mt 14:33).

Power Over Demons

Two demon possessed men met Jesus. They were violent men who prevented people from passing by the road near the tombs where they stayed. When they saw the Messiah, they cried out, saying, **"What do we have to do with You, Son of God? Have You come here to torment us before the time?"** (Mt 8:29). The demons knew that Jesus was the Son of God and that He not only had the power cast them out, but also to punish them in hell. So they asked Jesus to cast them out into a herd of pigs. Jesus let them go into the pigs, and they ran down a steep hill into the water and died (Mt 8:30-32).

Later, a woman who was not an Israelite cried out, saying, **"Have mercy on me, O Lord, Son of David; my daughter is cruelly demon-possessed"** (Mt 15:22). Jesus ignored her. He did not answer her plea at all. She kept shouting after Him, but Jesus said that He was only sent to Israel. But she came and bowed down to Him, saying, **"Lord, help me"** (Mt 15:25). He told her that it is not good to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs. But she said, **"Yes, Lord; but even the dogs feed on the crumbs which fall from their masters' table"** (Mt 15:27). Jesus said that her faith was great. So He healed her daughter.

Power to Forgive Sins

When the Messiah came to His own city, they brought to Him a paralyzed man who was lying on a bed. Jesus encouraged him, saying, **"Take courage, My son, your sins are forgiven"** (Mt 9:2). Some scribes

of the Law of Moses thought that Jesus spoke evil by forgiving the paralytic's sins. Jesus knew their thoughts and asked them why they were thinking evil in their hearts. Then while claiming He had the authority to forgive sins on the earth, He proved it by healing the paralyzed man. **"When the multitudes saw this, they were filled with awe, and glorified God, who had given such authority to men"** (Mt 9:8).

Power to Convert & Use Sinners

While traveling, Jesus saw a man named Matthew sitting in a tax collector's office. He said to him, **"Follow Me"** (Mt 9:9). Matthew then had a supper in honor of Jesus, and others were there who were tax collectors and sinners. Some Jews criticized Jesus, wondering why He would even eat with those kind of people. But Jesus said, **"Go and learn what this means, 'I DESIRE COMPASSION, AND NOT SACRIFICE,' for I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners"** (Mt 9:13).

Power to Raise the Dead

A synagogue official came to Jesus, bowing down, making an amazing request: **"My daughter has just died; but come and lay Your hand on her, and she will live"** (Mt 9:18). And while Jesus went with the man, a woman who had been suffering from bleeding for 12 years, came up behind Him and touched the end of His garment. Jesus turned and said to her, **"Take courage; your faith has made you well"** (Mt 9:22). At once she was healed. Then Jesus came into the official's house, but a crowd was gathered there to mourn the death of his child. Jesus told them to go away because she was not dead but asleep. They laughed at Him. Jesus took the girl by the hand and she got up. This news spread all over the land (Mt 9:23-26).

Power to Restore Sight

As Jesus passed on from there, two blind men followed Him, crying out, **"Have mercy on us, Son of David!"** (Mt 9:27). Jesus wanted to know if these blind men had faith in Him because He asked them, **"Do you believe that I am able to do this?"** (Mt 9:28).

They believed in Him, and He touched their eyes and they could see. Jesus warned them not to tell anybody, but they went out and spread the news all over (Mt 9:29-31).

At another time, Jesus felt compassion for two blind men who were crying out to Him. He touched their eyes, and they immediately regained their sight and followed Him (Mt 20:29-34).

Power to Make the Mute Speak

A man who could not speak and had a demon was brought to Jesus. Jesus cast out the demon, and the man was able to speak. And the multitude said, "Nothing like this was ever seen in Israel" (Mt 9:33). But some Jews, the Pharisees, reviled Jesus, claiming that He was doing these good things by the power of the Devil and not by the power of God.

Power to Help those in Distress and Lacking Right Guidance

While Jesus went about all the villages, powerfully proclaiming the kingdom of God, He saw the multitudes and He felt compassion for them. He knew they were distressed and downcast like sheep without a shepherd. Therefore he fittingly said, "The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few. Therefore beseech the Lord of the harvest to send out workers into His harvest" (Mt 9:37, 38).

Power to Give His Apostles Power

Then He sent His twelve apostles into the plentiful harvest. He gave them instructions to preach about the kingdom of God and power to cast out demons and to heal every kind of sickness and disease. One of these powerful twelve, Judas Iscariot, would later be condemned because he would betray Jesus (Mt 10-11:1). Soon after this, Jesus spoke well of John the Baptist, and He condemned people for not repenting when they witnessed both His and John's works (Mt 11:2-15; 11:16-30).

Power over the Sabbath

(A) He Is Lord and Master of the Sabbath

Again, the Jews wrongly criticized the Messiah. They saw Him walking through

the grain fields on the Sabbath, and noticed that His disciples began to pick and eat the heads of grain. Jesus answered, saying, "Have you not read what David did, when he became hungry, he and his companions; how he entered the house of God, and they ate the consecrated bread, which was not lawful for him to eat... Or have you not read in the Law, that on the Sabbath the priests in the temple break the Sabbath, and are innocent? But I say to you, that something greater than the temple is here" (Mt 12:3-6).

Jesus is greater than the temple and the Sabbath. For He said, "The Son of Man is LORD of the Sabbath" (Mt 12:8). "But if you had known what this means, 'I DESIRE COMPASSION, AND NOT A SACRIFICE,' you would not have condemned the innocent" (Mt 12:7).

(B) He Did Good Works on the Sabbath

The Jews were in the habit of condemning the innocent. They were poor judges of what was right and wrong. For example, Jesus did a good work on the Sabbath. He healed a man's hand that was withered. Because He did this good work on the Jewish Sabbath, a day when no work was to be done, the Pharisees wanted to destroy Him (Mt 12:9-14). Later, he cast out a demon from a man. All the people were wondering, "This man cannot be the Son of David, can he?" (Mt 12:23). But the Pharisees reviled Him, saying that He did this by the power of the Devil (Mt 12:22-24). Therefore the Messiah fittingly warned them that if they speak evil of the good Holy power that is doing all these miracles through Him, the Holy Spirit, then they would be guilty of an unforgivable sin; reviling the Holy Spirit (Mt 12:25-37). Yet the scribes and Pharisees tried to test Him, asking Him to perform some sign. So Jesus told them that evil people seek after signs (Mt 12:38-45; 16:1-4). He likened this evil to committing the sin of adultery. It should not take a sign or a miracle for people to believe in God. What are you seeking after, signs and miracles?

Powerful Parables

The Messiah taught the people using likenesses or comparisons. In this way He made powerful points that were hard to forget. For example, when His mother and

brothers were seeking to speak with Him, He said to the multitude, " **'Who is My mother and who are My brothers?'** And stretching out His hand toward His disciples, He said, **'Behold, My mother and My brothers! For whoever does the will of My Father who is in Heaven, he is My brother and sister and mother'** " (Mt 12:48-50).

Later, by the sea, Jesus spoke more parables, teaching people what the kingdom of God was like. He compared it to a man sowing seed, but only certain ones took good root and produced a crop (Mt 13:1-23). He said that even though good seed is sown, weeds will grow up along side of it until the harvest (Mt 13:24-30). He presented many other stories (Mt 13:31-52), comparing the kingdom of God to a mustard seed, leaven, treasure, a pearl, and a dragnet. Then Jesus went to His hometown, but was not honored there or accepted as a prophet. So He did not do many miracles because of their unbelief (Mt 13:53-58). Then King Herod beheaded the prophet John. This happened because of the adulterous marriage union the King had with his brother's wife. John told the king that it was not right for him to have his brother's wife in marriage. It is adultery if you marry someone else's wife. Then her daughter danced and pleased the King, so that the King offered her almost anything. Her mother told her to ask for the head of John the Baptist on a platter (Mt 14:1-12). And that is how John died. He died for opposing an adulterous marriage union.

Power to Feed Many

(A) 5,000 Fed and the Sick Healed

When Jesus saw a great multitude, He felt compassion for them, and He healed their sick. When evening came, Jesus wanted to feed them. But they only had five loaves of bread and two fish. Therefore Jesus caused a miracle to happen by multiplying what they had in order to feed more than 5,000 people (Mt 14:14-21).

(B) 4,000 Fed and the Sick Healed

Some time later He did the same thing, healing the sick and then feeding more than 4,000 people (Mt 15:29-39).

Now the disciples, from time to time, had difficulty understanding some parables Jesus spoke. For example, they did not understand when Jesus said, **"Not what enters into the mouth defiles the man, but what proceeds out of the mouth, this defiles the man"** (Mt 15:11). Jesus meant that food going into man does not defile him, but evil that comes out from the heart of man defiles him. The disciples did not understand when Jesus told them to beware the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees (Mt 16:6-12). He meant their teaching was bad.

Power to Give the Keys of the Kingdom to His Apostles

Jesus asked His disciples, **"Who do the people say that the Son of Man is?"** (Mt 16:13). They replied that some say He is John the Baptist or Elijah. But when Jesus asked the disciples who they thought He was, Peter replied, **"You are the Christ, the Son of the living God"** (Mt 16:16). Then Jesus blessed Peter for saying this, and proclaimed that the keys to the kingdom of heaven would be given to him. Whatever Peter, and the rest of the apostles, would bind on earth would be bound in heaven. This is referring to their teaching, that it would be the binding teaching foundation on which all Christians must be built (SEE Eph 2:20).

Power to Tell the Future

From time to time, Jesus would forewarn His disciples that He would suffer, die, and be raised to life (Mt 16:21-28; 17:22, 23; 20:17-19). He also predicted various destructions, end times, the sign of His second coming and the judgment day. He taught on this in detail and told His disciples to be ready for it. He told them stories that pointed out who would and who would not be ready for the Lord and the Judgment Day (Mt 24:1- chpt. 25:46).

Power to Be Glorified

Jesus took Peter, James and John up to a mountain. Then He was transfigured before them. His face shone like the sun. His garments became white as light. Moses and Elijah appeared with Him. A voice out of a bright white cloud said, **"This is My beloved Son, with whom I am well-pleased; listen to Him!"** (Mt 17:5).

Power to Cure Lunatics

When they came to a crowd, a man came up to Him. He fell on his knees and asked, **"Lord have mercy on my son, for he is a lunatic, and is very ill; for he often falls into the fire, and often into the water"** (Mt 17:15). Jesus rebuked the demon out of the boy, and he was cured.

Powerful Signs

When Jesus had to pay a tax, He told Peter to go throw a hook into the sea. The first fish he caught had enough money in its mouth to pay the tax (Mt 17:24-27). Then Jesus powerfully preached on these subjects:

1. Who is the greatest in the kingdom (Mt 18:1-14)
2. How to deal with a brother who sins (Mt 18:15-20)
3. How to have compassion on people (Mt 18:21-35)
4. The restrictions on divorce & remarriage (Mt 19:1-12)
5. How the kingdom belongs to children (Mt 19:13-15)
6. How hard it is for a rich man to follow Jesus (Mt 19:16-30)
7. Who will be the first and the last (Mt 19:30-20:16)

Power to Serve

When the mother of two apostles asked Jesus for her sons to be given the most powerful positions in the kingdom of God, to be able to sit at Jesus' right and on His left, the other ten apostles became angry. So Jesus taught them that if they want to be great men, and want to have first place, then they must become servants of others. He gave the example of Himself, that He did not come into the world to be served, but to be a servant (Mt 20:25-28). At a later time, He gave another example that would help them remember to be servants; He washed all 24 of the apostle's feet (Jn 13:7-17).

Then, so that Zechariah's prophecy could be fulfilled, Jesus went to Jerusalem riding on the colt of a donkey. "Say to the daughter of Zion, 'Behold your King is coming to you, gentle, and mounted on a donkey, even a colt, the foal of a beast of burden' " (Mt 21:5). The multitudes spread their garments on the road, and others were cutting branches and spreading them on the road as well. And they were going before and after Him shouting, "HOSANNA TO THE SON OF DAVID; BLESSED IS HE WHO COMES IN THE NAME OF THE LORD" (Mt 21:9). When He entered Jerusalem, He went into the temple.



Powerful Zeal for Righteousness and Powerful Condemnation for Hypocritical Religious Leaders

When Jesus entered the temple, He saw that they were buying and selling things there. So being zealous for what was right, He overturned their tables and would not permit people to carry merchandise through the temple (Mt 21:12, 13; Mark 11:15, 16). He said to them, "It is written, 'My house shall be called a house of prayer'; but you are making it a robbers' den" (Mt 21:13). Now when He healed the blind and the lame who came into the temple, and when the children were crying out, "Hosanna to the Son of David," the chief priests and scribes became angry. Jesus said to them, "Have you never read, 'Out of the mouth of infants and babes You have prepared praise for Yourself'?" (Mt 21:16). Then He left the temple and went to Bethany. In the morning He started to return to the city of Jerusalem. But first He became hungry and saw a fig tree. He went up to it and found no fruit on it. He said, "No longer shall there ever be fruit from you" (Mt 21:19). It withered. He used this to teach His disciples how unwavering faith can not only wither fig trees, but move mountains. Then when Jesus went into the temple and began teaching, the chief priests and the elders confronted Him and asked Him by what authority He did these things. Jesus began to powerfully refute them and tell them parables to condemn them. This stirred up their anger even more to want to seize Him (Mt 21:23-22:46). Then Jesus spoke openly to the multitudes and to His disciples, exposing and woefully condemning the hypocrisy of the Jewish religious leaders (Mt 23:1-39). Being shamed in this way would no doubt stir up their wrath even more to take and kill Him.

Conclusion

Jesus preached about the kingdom of God with authoritative power. No one else did as many miracles as He did. He truly did all things well, miraculously. This gained Israel's attention and praise. The Jewish authorities did not like to see anybody get more attention and praise than they or to have more power than them. So they planned to seize and kill Jesus.

The Messiah Died, was Buried, & Rose on the third day

Matthew 26-28

THE BEGINNING OR START OF THE CHRISTIAN AGE [33 A.D.]

This Is the Gospel

Jesus' death for our sins, His burial, and His resurrection is the gospel. For example, Paul said, "Now I make known to you, brethren, the gospel which I preached to you, which you also received, in which you also stand, by which you are also saved, if you hold fast the word which I preached to you, unless you believed in vain. For I delivered to you as of first importance, what I also received, that **Christ died [D]** for our sins according to the Scriptures [the O.T. prophecy or foretelling of], and that He **was buried [B]**, and that He **was raised [R]** on the third day according to the Scriptures [the O.T. prophecy or foretelling of], and that He appeared to Cephas, then to the twelve" (1 Cor 15:1-5).

So the gospel is mainly all about the prophetic death, burial, and resurrection [the DBR] of the Messiah and what this should mean to us in regards to our salvation vs. condemnation.

He was betrayed and crucified

Jesus told His disciples that He was going to be crucified, saying, "You know that after two days the Passover is coming, and the Son of Man is to be delivered up for crucifixion" (Mt 26:2). Then Israel's chief priests, including Caiaphas who was the high priest, and the elders of the people came together to plan to capture and kill Jesus (Mt 26:3-5).

Now when Jesus was in Bethany, at the home of Simon the leper, a woman came and poured expensive perfume on His head. Some disciples told her that she wasted it by using it this way. But Jesus said to them, "Why do you bother the woman? For she has done a good deed to Me. For the poor you have with you always; but you do not always have Me. For when she poured this perfume upon My body, she did it to prepare Me for burial. Truly I say to you, wherever this gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done shall also be spoken of in memory of her" (Mt 26:6-13).

Then Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve apostles, went to betray Jesus to the chief priests. He said to them, "What are you willing to give me to deliver Him up to you" (Mt 26:14, 15). The priests gave him thirty pieces of silver. From then on, Judas looked for a opportunity to betray Jesus to them (Mt 26:16).

During the Passover meal, Jesus said to the twelve that one of them would betray Him. Each began to say, "Surely not I, Lord?" (Mt 26:22). Jesus answered, "He who dipped his hand with Me in the bowl is the one who will betray Me. The Son

of Man is to go, just as it is written of Him; but woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been good for that man if he had not been born" (Mt 26:23-24). "And Judas, who was betraying Him, answered and said, 'Surely it is not I, Rabbi?' He said to him, 'You have said it yourself' " (Mt 26:25).

Then Jesus took some bread and after a blessing, He broke it and told His disciples to "Take, eat it; this is My body" (Mt 26:26). Then He took the cup, which contained the fruit of the vine. He gave thanks and told all of them to drink from it, saying, "This is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for forgiveness of sins" (Mt 26:28). [**He meant that the pouring out of His blood would be the starting point of a new covenant and age, the Christian Age.**]

Afterward, they sang a hymn and went to the Mount of Olives (Mt 26:26-30). That night, Jesus began to tell His disciples that they would all fall away from Him. Peter said that he would never fall away. Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you that this very night, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times" (Mt 26:34). But Peter disagreed and said that he would even die with the Messiah. All the disciples said the same thing too. When they arrived at the place called Gethsemane, a garden on the Mount of Olives, Jesus took three of His disciples with Him to pray. Jesus was sorrowful to the point of death, because he knew what was about to happen to Him. Therefore He prayed to His Father three times: "If it is possible, let this cup pass from Me; yet not as I will, but as You will" (Mt 26:39).

Then His betrayer was at hand (Mt 26:40-46). "Judas, one of the twelve, came up, accompanied by a great multitude with swords and clubs, from the chief priests and elders of the people. Now Judas gave them a sign, saying 'Whomever I shall kiss, He is the one; seize Him.' And immediately he

went to Jesus and said, 'Hail, Rabbi!' and kissed Him" (Mt 26:47, 48). Then the guards grabbed Jesus. But He said to the multitude, "All this has taken place that the Scriptures of the prophets may be fulfilled" (Mt 26:56). Then all the disciples fled, fulfilling what the prophet Zechariah said: "I WILL STRIKE DOWN THE SHEPHERD, AND THE SHEEP OF THE FLOCK SHALL BE SCATTERED" (Zech 13:7).

1. CHRIST DIED [D]

Three times the Jews condemned Jesus to death. First they condemned Him in the council of Israel. The guards brought Jesus to the high priest, the scribes, and the elders of Israel. The whole council kept trying to obtain false testimony against Him. Two came forward and said, "This man stated, 'I am able to destroy the temple of God and to rebuild it in three days' " (Mt 26:60, 61). [*But Jesus meant the temple of His body in connection to His resurrection from the dead, not the temple in Jerusalem Jn 2:19-22.*]

Then Caiaphas, the high priest, asked, "Tell us whether you are the Christ, the Son of God" (Mt 26:63). Jesus agreed, saying, "You have said it yourself" (Mt 26:64). Because of this [the "good confession" 1 Tim 6:13], they judged Him as speaking blasphemy and worthy of death (Mt 26:63-68). Then they mocked and abused Him, spitting in His face, and beating Him with their fists, saying, "Prophecy to us, You Christ; who is the one who hit You?" (Mt 26:67, 68).

Now Peter had followed them to where they had taken Jesus. Three different times Peter was told by others that he was with Jesus. But Peter denied that he knew Jesus. On his third denial, a rooster crowed. Then Peter wept bitterly; he remembered that Jesus had said this would certainly happen (Mt 26:69-75). Then the chief priests and elders brought Jesus to Pilate, the Roman governor, and accused Him and condemned Him to death in front of him. This was the second time that the Jews condemned Jesus. When Judas found out that Jesus had



been condemned to die, he felt remorse and returned the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders, saying, "I have sinned by betraying innocent blood" (Mt 27:4). Judas threw the silver into the sanctuary and went and hanged himself. The Jews used the money to buy the Potter's field. Then what was spoken through the prophet Jeremiah was fulfilled: "And they took the thirty pieces of silver, the price of the one whose price had been set by the sons of Israel; and they gave them for the Potter's Field, as the LORD directed me" (Mt 27:9).

While Jesus was being kept by the Romans, Pilate asked Jesus if He was the King of the Jews. Jesus agreed [the good confession]. Yet Jesus kept silent while the chief priests and elders accused Him. Pilate was amazed at His silence (Mt 27:11-14). This was to fulfill what the prophet Isaiah said: "He was oppressed and He was afflicted, Yet He did not open His mouth; Like a lamb that is led to slaughter, And like a sheep that is silent before its shearers, So He did not open His mouth" (Is 53:7).

Now Pilate had a custom at the Passover Feast to release one prisoner whom the Jews wanted. So he asked the crowd, "Whom do you want me to release for you? Barabbas, or Jesus who is called Christ?" (Mt 27:17). While Pilate was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent to him, saying, "Have nothing to do with that righteous Man; for last night I suffered greatly in a dream because of Him" (Mt 27:19). But the chief priests and elders of the Jews stirred up the crowd to ask for Barabbas instead of Jesus. The whole crowd kept shouting, and saying about Jesus, "Let Him be crucified" (Mt 27:22). Then, at the riotous request of the Jews, Pilate released Barabbas and had the Messiah scourged and delivered up to be crucified. This was the third time that Jesus was condemned to death.

Before they crucified Him, Roman soldiers stood around Jesus and mocked Him. They stripped Him, and put a scarlet robe on Him. They made a crown of thorns and put it on His head, and put a reed in His hand. They knelt down to

Him mockingly, saying, "Hail, King of the Jews" (Mt 27:29). They spat on Him and beat Him on the head with the reed. Then they led Him away to be crucified to the place of the skull, Golgotha. As they were coming out, the soldiers had Simon of Cyrene bear His cross. When they came to Golgotha, they gave him wine to drink mixed with gall [something bitter]. But after tasting it, He was unwilling to drink it. When they had crucified Him, they divided up His garments among them, and they cast lots for one piece of His clothing, fulfilling what the prophet King David said about the Messiah: "They divide my garments among them, And for my clothing they cast lots" (Ps 22:18). They put a sign above His head, stating the reason why He was being crucified. It said: "THIS IS JESUS THE KING OF THE



JEW" (Mt 27:37). But the Jews tried to get Pilate to change the sign to say that He claimed to be the King of the Jews. But Pilate would not change it.

While He was hanging on the cross, many who passed by wagged their heads at Him and insulted and reviled Him. Even two robbers who were crucified next to Him, one on either side, insulted Him. They mocked Him because He seemed to have no power to save Himself, even though He claimed to be God's Son (Mt 27:38-44).

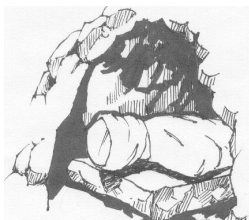
After a while darkness fell upon the earth for three hours. Then Jesus cried out, "MY GOD, MY GOD, WHY HAST THOU FORSAKEN ME?" (Mt 27:46). Again He cried out and yielded up His spirit. Then the curtain that was in the Jewish temple was torn completely in two, the earth shook, rocks were split, and the tombs were opened so that many bodies of the saints were raised from the dead and

entered Jerusalem to appear to many. The centurion who kept guard over Jesus became very afraid and exclaimed, "Truly this was the Son of God!" (Mt 27:54).

Now the Jews did not want the bodies of those who were crucified to continue to hang during the upcoming holy day. So they asked Pilate to have their legs broken to help kill them quickly. But when the guards saw that Jesus was already dead, they did not break His legs. Instead, they pierced His side and blood and water flowed out (Jn 19:31-34). This happened to fulfill what was spoken by the prophets: "He keeps all his bones; Not one of them is broken" (Ps 34:20). "They will look on Me whom they have pierced" (Zech 12:10).

2. CHRIST WAS BURIED [B]

Joseph, who was a disciple of Jesus, a rich man, and member of the Jewish ruling council who did not agree with their decision to kill Jesus (Lk 23:51), gathered up his courage and went and asked Pilate for the body of Jesus. Pilate gave Joseph permission to take the body. He then wrapped it in a clean linen cloth and laid it in a new tomb (Mt 27:57-61). Nicodemus, also a Jewish ruler, who had first come to Him by night (Jn 19:39), brought spices to prepare the body of Jesus before He was secured in the tomb (Jn 19:39). The Jewish rulers knew that Jesus said that He would rise again on the third day. So they went to Pilate and got his permission to seal the tomb and to put guards there. They told Pilate that Jesus' disciples might come and take the body and then claim that Jesus rose from the dead, causing an even bigger stir (Mt 27:62-66).



3. CHRIST ROSE [R]

Now at the dawn of the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary went to look at the tomb. Now there was an earthquake because an angel of the Lord came from heaven and rolled the stone away and sat upon it. The guards shook for fear and became like dead men. The angel told the women that Jesus had risen and to look where He used to lay in the tomb. The angel told them to go quickly and tell His disciples that He has risen from the dead. While they were on the way, Jesus met these woman and they fell at His feet, worshiping Him. Then Jesus told them to tell His disciples that He would go before them into Galilee and there they would see Him (Mt 28:1-10). But when the Jewish rulers heard about what had happened, they bought the silence of the guards with a large sum of money. They told the guards to report that the disciples of Jesus came and stole Him away while they were asleep. And if this came to the ears of the governor, they promised to win the governor over and keep them out of trouble (Mt 28:11-15).



Mark summarizes some of the other appearances Jesus made after he had risen from the dead. For example, he appeared to two disciples while they were walking in the country. Then He appeared to the eleven apostles and He criticized them for failing to believe the report that He had risen from the dead (Mk 16:9-14). He appeared to many others as well. So in conclusion, we now know what the gospel is. For example, "Now I make known to you, brethren, the gospel... by which you are also saved... that Christ died [D] for our sins according to the Scriptures [the O.T. prophecies], and that He was buried [B], and that He was raised [R] on the third day according to the Scriptures, and that He appeared to Cephas, then to the twelve" (1 Cor 15:1-5). So the gospel essentially is the DBR of Jesus Christ for our sins. Now before Jesus returned to heaven, He commanded His disciples to go in to every nation and make disciples by preaching this gospel to them, that Christ **D**ied for our sins, was **B**uried, and **R**aised from the dead on the third day. This is the hope of the gospel, the forgiveness of sins and the resurrection of the dead through Jesus Christ.

Go make disciples of Christ in every nation

Matthew 28:16-20

Go make disciples!

After Jesus arose from the dead, He appeared to His apostles at a mountain in Galilee and they worshiped Him there. But some were doubtful (Mt 28:16, 17). Then Jesus sent them into all the

"I baptize you
in the name of
the Father, the Son (Jesus Christ), and
the Holy Spirit for the
forgiveness of your sins"

This is how to call on the name
of the Lord to be saved, in wa-
ter baptism, not in prayer.

nations to make disciples, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. **Go** therefore and **make disciples** [1] **of all the nations**, [2] **baptizing** them **in the name** of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, [3] teaching them to **observe all** that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age" (Mt 28:18-20). The subject of this passage is making disciples of Christ and how to do it! There were three things which Jesus commanded the apostles (and us) to do in order to "make disciples" of Christ.

1. Preach the gospel (the DBR) to both Jews and Gentiles

First, they were to preach the gospel (the DBR of Jesus Christ) to both Jews and Gentiles, all the nations. He said, "Go into **all** the world and **preach the gospel** [the DBR] to **all** creation" (Mk 16:15). So, when a risen Jesus told the apostles to "Go therefore and make disciples of **all the nations**" (Mt 28:19), He meant for them to preach the gospel of His death,

burial, and resurrection to both the Jews and the Gentiles. In the Old Testament, God called any group of people who were not the Jews "the nations". For example, the Psalmist said, "Why do **the nations** rage, and the people plot a vain thing (against the Messiah)?" (Ps 2:1). And so they were to preach the gospel also to the Gentiles, the nations. As the prophet Isaiah said about the Messiah, "It is too small a thing that You should be My Servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob and to restore the preserved ones of Israel; I will also make You **a light of the nations** [the Gentiles] so that My salvation may reach to the end of the earth" (Is 49:6). This specific prophecy began to be fulfilled with the apostles, since a risen Jesus commanded them to now go and preach the gospel of His death, burial, and resurrection to all the nations, not only to the nation of the Jews.

2. Call on His name in water baptism for salvation, not in prayer

Second, when people believed it, that is when they started to repent and believe that Jesus Christ died for their sins, was buried, and raised from the dead on the third day, as baptizers, they were to call on the name of the Lord for salvation in their water baptism, not in prayer. This is confirmed by Mark's account, where a risen Jesus said to the apostles, "Go [1] into all the world and **preach the gospel** [the DBR] to all creation. [2] He who **has** believed and **has been** baptized [3] shall be saved; but he who has disbelieved shall be condemned" (Mk 16:15, 16). Likewise, a risen Jesus said to the apostles, "Thus it is written, that the Christ would

suffer and rise again from the dead the third day, and that repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations, beginning from Jerusalem" (Lk 24: 46, 47). So we can see that belief and water baptism, along with repentance, are essential for anyone in any nation to become a disciple of the Lord Jesus Christ.

Therefore, when people start to repent and believe the gospel (the DBR), Jesus said to be "baptizing them [the nations] in the name of the [1] Father and [2] the Son and [3] the Holy Spirit". He meant, as baptizers, they must call on the names of the three persons of God at someone's water baptism. This is how we are to call on the name of the Lord to be saved. As it is written, "WHOEVER WILL CALL ON THE NAME OF THE LORD WILL BE SAVED" (Ro 10:13). For example, consider how Paul called on the name of the Lord to be saved. He himself testified that Jesus sent a man to him who said, "Now why do you delay? Get up and be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on His name" (Ac 22:16). So Paul was led to call on the name of the Lord in his water baptism to "wash away" his "sins," not in prayer. Actually, it is understood that the one who baptized him called on the name of the Lord for him during his baptism, saying something like, "I baptize you in the name of the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit for the forgiveness of your sins". For Jesus said to be "baptizing them [the nations] in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit".

Notes: At the end of this course, there is a lesson devoted to water baptism. So, for now, please understand and realize that Jesus directed baptizers to call on the name of the Lord for salvation during a person's water baptism, not to lead or ask the person to say a prayer for his salvation. Indeed, the gospel is a Death, Burial, and Resurrection (DBR), not a Death, Prayer, and Resurrection (DPR). Our water baptism represents Christ's burial (SEE Ro 6:3-5). Prayer cannot represent it, nor was it commanded or designed to do so. Nor is prayer the definition of repentance. We are not to pray and be baptized. Indeed, we are to repent and be baptized. Near the end of this course, there is a lesson on repentance. In it you will see that repentance does not mean prayer. These are two different things.

3. Mature them in everything Jesus commanded

Third, after water baptizing them in the name of the Lord, they were to continue to teach them the rest of Christ's commandments. There are more commandments to learn than simply repenting and being baptized in the name of the Lord for one's salvation. So, Jesus said, after baptizing people, to be "teaching them to observe all that I commanded" (Mt 28:20). They must keep teaching them everything!

Notes: This would take some time to accomplish, and it is one of the reasons why we need to assemble together on a regular basis, to learn to practice "all" that Christ "commanded". For example, it is one thing to preach about the death, burial, and resurrection of Jesus Christ and how to properly respond to it to be saved, in repentance and baptism (Ac 2:38). But it is another thing to teach the Christian life. "Sirs, what must I do to be saved?" (Ac 16:30) is quite a bit different than "walk in a manner worthy of the calling with which you have been called" (Eph 4:1). It is one thing to be called, it is another thing to live up to that calling. It is one thing to be saved by the grace of God, yet it is another thing to continue to grow in the grace of God, meaning what He favors, in order to escape the wrath of God! It is one thing to come to believe in God, yet it is another thing to have that young faith severely tested by trials. It is one thing to "believe," but it is another thing to prove that you believe by your deeds. It is one thing to drink milk, it is another thing to eat solid food. It is one thing to discern the basics, yet it is another thing to have one's senses developed over time to discern what is right or wrong concerning more difficult subjects in the Scriptures. It is one thing to get your start in Christ, to be a babe, but it is quite another thing to reach the height of Christ, to be a mature Christian. It is one thing to get saved by the gospel, it is another thing to learn all the different aspects of Christian worship, which includes how to live a Christian life (SEE Ro 12:1). This is why I have written several advanced studies on Christian worship and living, including ones on spiritual gifts, to help us to learn, understand, and more perfectly fulfill the advanced teachings and will of Christ.

Now Jesus told the apostles to wait in Jerusalem to receive special power from God. This power would help enable them to accomplish their great and far reaching work as apostles (Lk 24:46-49); work that would take them into all the different nations with the gospel. In the book of the Acts of the Apostles, we can see how they received this power, and how they carried out Jesus' command to "make disciples of all nations". Notice that they first preached the gospel to certain people in those nations, that is they preached to them the death, burial and resurrection of Jesus Christ for their sins. The ones who believed it started to repent. And these then were instructed to call on the name of the Lord to be saved in their water baptism, not in prayer.

Now Complete the
TEST on the Messiah

Bible Study On Salvation Part 1



Advanced Chronological Study of The Holy Bible
Containing The Old and New Testaments, Rick David,
An Evangelist and Author of FreeBibleStudy.org

How Jesus said we must be saved +

Review His key teachings

We just finished *The Bible Study on the Messiah*, in which we studied the gospel of Jesus Christ according to Matthew. Now let us quickly review several of Jesus' key teachings on salvation from it, as well as from Mark's, Luke's, and John's accounts.

As you will see in the next lesson on "How the apostles said we must be saved," these key teachings on salvation have been repeated by them, even in greater detail, and with examples of how people were led to put them in to practice.

At the Beginning of His Ministry

After John baptized Him, "Jesus began to preach and say, '**Repent**, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand' " (Mt 4:17). He also began to say, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand; **repent and believe in the gospel**" (Mk 1:15). So when Jesus began His teaching ministry, the very first thing He preached was repentance for salvation, along with belief in the gospel, which is essentially the DBR of Christ for our sins (1 Cor 15:1, 3, 4).

During His Ministry

1. Jesus taught that the only way to be saved is **through Him alone** (Jn 14:6).

So salvation is found in no other name under heaven (Ac 4:14); not in Moses' name, or in any other name. We must be saved through Jesus Christ alone, exclusively.

2. He taught that the way to be saved is **narrow**, not broad, and that "**few... find it**" (Mt 7:13, 14). He said that many follow the broad way, the main stream, so to speak, "**that leads to destruction**". So we must strive to enter through the narrow door of the gospel of Jesus Christ to be saved.

For it is difficult, not easy, for one to be saved from his sins by the gospel (SEE 1 Pe 4:18). Repentance is difficult. It is not easy to overcome one's sins of sexual immorality, idolatry, fornication, adultery, sensuality, unbelief, etc. Consider Noah. Only eight souls were saved in his day (1 Pe 3:20, 21). Even though he was a righteous man (Ge 7:1), it was difficult for him and his household to be saved.

3. Jesus taught that it is impossible for man to save himself without God. So He indicated that we can only be **saved by the grace of God** (Mt 19:25, 26).

"For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that **not of yourselves**. It is the gift of God" (Eph 2:8). So we cannot earn our own salvation. Yet, "He became to all those who **obey Him** the source of eternal salvation" (He 5:9). So when we are saved by the gospel, we are not earning it, we are simply obeying it to be saved.

4. He taught that all people everywhere are sinners and must **repent**. And just because some sinners suffer in this life because of their sins, it does not mean that we are any better than them. We all still need to repent to be saved (Lk 13:1-3).

"For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God" (Ro 3:23). "If we say we say that we have not sinned, we make Him a liar, and His word is not in us" (1 Jn 1:10). So, we all must repent.

5. He taught that we must **confess** His name before men or else He will not confess us before God (Mt 10:32). So, to be saved, we must continue to tell others who He is.

For "if you confess with your mouth Jesus as Lord... you will be saved" (Ro 10:9). This is the "good confession" (1 Tim 6:12), that Jesus is Lord and Christ, the Messiah. "And I say to you, everyone who **confesses Me** before men, the Son of Man will confess him also before the angels of God; but he who **denies Me** before men will be denied before the angels of God" (Lk 12:8, 9). "But for the cowardly... their part will be in the lake that burns with fire and brimstone" (Re 21:8). We must not be ashamed of the name of Jesus Christ in public. We must be courageous for His name and gospel.

6. Jesus taught that in order to enter into His kingdom one must be **born again** (Jn 3:3, 5, 7). This illustrates that no one can stay the same. No one is born Christian. Through the gospel, we all must somehow, in some way, become born again, meaning become a new person.

Indeed, we must all learn to obey the gospel to be saved. We all have sinned (Ro 3:23), so we all must repent. No one begins this life knowing and obeying the gospel of God's salvation. One must come to know it (believe it) and obey it, thus demonstrating a new life by it.

7. He taught that a **day of judgment** is coming where only the **righteous** will receive eternal life, not the unrighteous (Mt 25; Jn 5:29). So we must become righteous to be saved. "**For we will all stand before the judgment seat of God**" (Ro 14:10).

This verse implies that Paul, an apostle, and the church in Rome, as well as us, would be summoned to stand before God's seat of judgment to determine who is righteous or unrighteous in His sight. For the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God (1 Cor 6:9).

At the End of His Ministry

It is very important to carefully study what Jesus commanded for salvation after He rose from the dead. There are many reasons for this. First, before He was raised from the dead, no one knew what the gospel was, not even the thief on the cross next to Jesus. So no one could yet preach the gospel of Jesus Christ to anyone, a gospel which Paul said essentially is the DBR of Christ for our sins (1 Cor 15:1, 3, 4). Therefore, no one could yet respond to it in the way in which a risen Christ would command. Second, He had to fully shed His blood to the point of death in order to start or begin the Christian covenant, to put it into effect (SEE Lk 22:20; He 9:18). For no covenant was started without the shedding of blood. Third, by shedding His blood, and by fulfilling all the related prophecies from the Old Testament concerning the Messiah, He fulfilled or completed that covenant, and therefore He ended it to begin His, the Christian covenant (Mt 5:17).

Now there are three key passages which list the commandments which Christ gave to the apostles after He arose from the dead and before He returned to heaven. These commandments specifically relate to how they (and we) were to make disciples of all the nations. We already carefully studied one of these passages (Mt 28:16-20) in the lesson "Go make disciples of Christ in every nation". A second passage is in Luke 24:46-48, in which Jesus simply said, "repentance for the forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations" (Lk 24:47). So, even though the other two related passages do not include this teaching, repentance is also an essential response to the gospel for salvation and to become a disciple of Christ.

Sequences to Salvation Taught Today

1. Believed 2. Baptized 3. **Saved**

Jesus, His apostles, prophets, & the N.T. teach this / Mk 16:16; Ac 2:38

1. Believed 2. **Saved** 3. Baptized

Baptists, evangelicals, protestants teach this

1. Believed 2. **Prayed** 3. **Saved**

Baptists, evangelicals, etc. teach this

1. **Saved** 2. Believed 3. Baptized

Predestinationalists, Calvinists teach this

1. Baptized 2. **Saved** 3. Believed

Catholics and some protestant churches teach this

The proper sequence to salvation: In the third passage, a risen Jesus said, "Go into all the world and [1] preach the gospel to all creation. He who [2] has believed and [3] has been baptized will be saved; but he who has disbelieved shall be condemned" (Mk 16:15, 16). So, they were instructed to make disciples by first preaching the gospel to some people. Second, those who actually believed it, that is, those who started to repent and believe that Christ died for their sins, was buried, and raised from the dead on the third day, were to be, third, water baptized (in the name of the Lord / SEE Mt 28:19; Ac 22:16). This is how Jesus said they "will be saved". It is the correct sequence to salvation. Is this how you were taught to be saved? Below, in the chart, consider and compare the different sequences to salvation which are taught today. Why do so many teachers get the correct sequence to salvation mixed up? Many have mistakenly taught or obeyed these unauthorized sequences; they are out of order.

Do you understand how Jesus said we must be saved?

After Jesus arose from the dead, thus completing the gospel (the DBR), He then gave specific commandments to His apostles on how to make disciples. He sent them to preach the gospel to every person. If people started to repent and believe it (in the death, burial, and resurrection of Christ for their sins), they were instructed to immediately call on the name of the Lord to be saved in water baptism, not say a prayer for salvation. Do you believe in the DBR of Christ for your sins? If so, have you started to repent of your sins and have you called on the name of the Lord to be saved in water baptism? If not, at your earliest availability, are you willing to schedule your baptism?

Notes: If you realize that you have followed one of these unauthorized sequences to salvation, I encourage you to do it the right way and then you will be right with the Lord. Consider this story. A certain woman went to a "revival meeting," and responded to the message. Before she was water baptized, she was told that she was already saved, and that baptism had nothing to do with her salvation. And so she was baptized in a nearby lake. But later, when she realized, through studying Christ's teaching on the sequence to salvation, that this was not the truth about baptism, she then was willing to be re-baptized for the right reasons. So she was re-baptized for the remission of her sins and to be saved. She did it right. Yet, someone might say, "In Mark 16:16, Jesus said it is those who do not believe who will be condemned. So all you have to do is believe. You do not have to be baptized to be saved." First of all, this is not what Jesus said. Indeed, as it reads, He included baptism for salvation. Secondly, it is obvious that unbelievers (and atheists) will not get baptized for Jesus, and so they will be condemned.

How the apostles said we must be saved

Acts 1-28

Zeus Head, 1st c AD



In Lystra, Paul and Barnabas were mistaken for Zeus and Hermes (Ac 14:8-14)

How Sinners Were Saved by the Gospel

The Book of the Acts of the Apostles records how they went "into all the world" (Mk 16:15) to "make disciples" (Mt 28:18), thus fulfilling what Jesus told them to do. So, in this book we can study the examples of how sinners were saved by the gospel (the DBR).

How 3,000 people were saved in Jerusalem on Pentecost

Soon after Jesus ascended back into heaven, the day of Pentecost came. People from all over the world were gathered in Jerusalem to celebrate it.

Note: Pentecost means "fiftieth" because the Israelites were to count seven weeks after the Passover Feast, and then celebrate the Feast of Weeks (Pentecost). The Feast of Weeks was a celebration of the first fruits of their harvest. They were to gather together to give some of their increase to the Lord, and rejoice before Him (Ex 23:16; 34:22; De 16:1, 8-11).

Introduction to Acts

Not only did the Messiah introduce the Christian Age with great power, His apostles would also be given great power to firmly establish it. For example, at the end of Jesus' earthly life, He told His apostles to: "Stay in the city until you are clothed with power from on high" (Lk 24:49). This power would help them act out the command they received from Jesus, "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations" (Mt 28:19). So the book of Acts records how the apostles actually received this power from God, and then how they used it to make disciples all over the world. This is why the book is also called The Acts of The Apostles, and why it is placed chronologically right after the four Gospel accounts. Historically, it is exactly what happened after the gospel accounts. Therefore, we continue our chronological study of the Bible with the book of Acts. In it we learn how the apostles, and those who worked with them, firmly established the disciple making pattern that all must follow.

Acts begins with Jesus gathering His apostles together, and telling them to wait in the city of Jerusalem until they received power from on high, and that they would be His witnesses, even into the remotest parts of the earth (Ac 1:8). Then Jesus was lifted up into heaven, never to return again until the end (Ac 1:9-11). Later, when the disciples were together, Peter told them that they had to choose a replacement for Judas Iscariot, who betrayed the Messiah. This replacement would be an apostle and witness with them of the Lord Jesus. Peter said that the one chosen must be a man who had been with them since the time of Jesus' baptism by John, until the time He was taken up into heaven. Two men were brought forth, Joseph and Matthias. They prayed and asked God to help them choose which one to make an apostle. Then they drew lots and the lot fell to Matthias (Ac 1:12-26). So Matthias became an apostle of Christ.

1. The apostles preached the gospel with power

Now during Pentecost, as the apostles were sitting in a house in Jerusalem, there came from heaven a noise like a violent rushing wind. The Holy Spirit came down upon them in the form of a tongue of fire that rested on each one of them. By this powerful outpouring of the Spirit, the apostles began to speak in other intelligible languages (Ac 2:1-4), languages that the different visiting foreigners in Jerusalem could understand (in their own native language). The crowd came together because they heard the sound and the different languages. They were astonished, saying, "How is it that we each hear them in our own language to which we were born? Parthians and Medes and Elamites, and residents of Mesopotamia, Judea and Cappadocia, Pontus and Asia, Phrygia and Pamphylia, Egypt and the districts of Libya around Cyrene, and visitors from Rome, both Jews and proselytes, Cretans and Arabs—we hear them in our own tongues speaking the mighty deeds of God" (Ac 2:8-11). Some people mocked the apostles and said that they were drunk. But Peter took his stand with the eleven and began to proclaim to them what was actually happening. Peter said of the apostles, "These men are not drunk... but this is what was spoken of through the prophet Joel: 'AND IT SHALL BE IN THE LAST DAYS,' God says, 'THAT I WILL POUR FORTH OF MY SPIRIT UPON ALL MANKIND; AND YOUR SONS AND YOUR DAUGHTERS SHALL PROPHECY' " (Ac 2:15-17).

Then Peter boldly told them the gospel of Jesus Christ. He spoke of His powerful ministry on earth, His death, and His resurrection. He said that they put the Lord Jesus Christ to death by nailing Him to a cross using the hands of godless

men, all of which happened by the foreknowledge and predetermined plan of God. He quoted certain prophecies to them which David made about the resurrection of the Messiah, saying, "**THOU WILT NOT ABANDON MY SOUL TO HADES, NOR ALLOW THY HOLY ONE TO UNDERGO DECAY**" (Ac 2:27). And, "**HE WAS NEITHER ABANDONED TO HADES, NOR DID HIS FLESH SUFFER DECAY**" (Ac 2:31). Peter said other convincing things, but ended his message with this bold conclusion: "**Therefore let all the house of Israel know for certain that God has made Him both Lord and Christ—this Jesus whom you crucified**" (Ac 2:36).

2. After this, they asked "What shall we do" (to be saved)

"Now when they heard this [the gospel], they were **pierced** to the heart, and said to Peter and the rest of the apostles, 'Brethren, what shall we do?' And Peter said to them, '**Repent**, and let each of you **be baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. For the promise is for you and your children, and for all who are far off, as many as the Lord our God shall call to Himself' " (Ac 2:37-39). "So then, **those who had received his word were baptized**; and there were **added that day** about three thousand souls" (Ac 2:41, 42). So when they asked what they should do to be saved, Peter told them what they ought to do, to repent and be baptized for the forgiveness of their sins, and to receive the gift of the Holy Spirit [the indwelling person of God]. **And so we can see that there is something we need to do to be saved.** That day, about three thousand people, by faith, "**received his word**" and obeyed the gospel, for they repented (as evidenced by their piercing sorrow of heart), and

they were baptized, and therefore they were added to the number of "those who were being **saved**" (Ac 2:47). For the subject of this passage is how to be saved through the gospel of Jesus Christ. So three thousand souls "**received his word,**" Peter's, and therefore received Jesus as Christ in this way, through repentance and baptism.

Notice: **(1)** First Peter preached the Gospel to them. **(2)** Second, those who believed it "**were pierced**", that is, as the began to believe it, they started to painfully repent in their hearts. [Has the preaching of the gospel pierced your heart yet?] **(3)** Third, they responded to the gospel, to the ones teaching, and asked what they should do [obviously to be saved, for this is the subject of this passage and the gospel]. **(4)** Then Peter made these disciples just as Jesus Christ had commanded him and the other apostles (Mk 16:15, 16; Mt 28:19). Peter told the ones who believed in Jesus to "**repent!**" "**and be baptized**". "**So then, those who had received his word were baptized;** and there were added that day about three thousand souls" (Ac 2:41, 42). So three thousand souls were added to the number of those being saved by the gospel.

Indeed, day by day, the number of disciples were increasing (Ac 2:47). As the apostles continued to preach the gospel of Jesus Christ, "**Many of those who had heard the message believed; and the number of the men came to be about five thousand**" (Ac 4:4). "**And all the more believers in the Lord, multitudes of men and women, were constantly added to their number**" (Ac 5:14).

How the Samaritans were saved by the gospel

After some time, the Jews persecuted and scattered the Christians away from Jerusalem. But the apostles remained in Jerusalem (Ac 8:1). Those who were scattered went about preaching the word. Philip was one of them.

1. Philip preached the gospel with power

And Philip began proclaiming the Christ to the Samaritans. (Because the apostles remained at Jerusalem during the persecution, this Philip was probably Philip the evangelist, and not Philip the apostle.) The Samaritans were rejoicing over the work that Philip was doing because he was casting out demons and healing their sick.

2. When they believed, they were baptized

Philip was making disciples because it says, "**When they believed Philip preaching the good news about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ, they were being baptized, men and women alike**" (Ac 8:12). Even a magician believed the Gospel, repented of practicing magic, and was baptized (Ac 8:13). When the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent two apostles to them, Peter and John. These apostles then laid their hands on the Samaritans to cause them to be baptized with the Holy Spirit. This would continue to help fulfill Joel's prophecy that Peter quoted on the day of Pentecost, that God's miraculous Spirit would be poured out in the last days (Joel 2:28-32). Peter and John also solemnly testified to the Samaritans the word of God (Ac 8:14-25).

How the treasurer of Ethiopia was saved

Now God directed Philip to travel to a certain road south of Jerusalem, the road to Gaza. There he saw a chariot that belonged to an Ethiopian

eunuch. This man was in charge of all the treasure of Candace, Queen of Ethiopia. He had come to Jerusalem to worship God, but was now returning to Ethiopia.

1. Philip preached Jesus to him (which included water baptism)

"And the Spirit said to Philip, 'Go up and join this chariot.' And when Philip had run up, he heard him reading Isaiah the prophet, and said, 'Do you understand what you are reading?' And he said, 'Well, how could I, unless someone guides me?' And he invited Philip to come up and sit with him. Now the passage of Scripture which he was reading was this: 'HE WAS LED AS A SHEEP TO THE SLAUGHTER; AND AS A LAMB BEFORE ITS SHEARER IS SILENT, SO HE DOES NOT OPEN HIS MOUTH. IN HUMILIATION HIS JUDGMENT WAS TAKEN AWAY.' The eunuch answered Philip and said, 'Please tell me, of whom does the prophet say this? Of himself or of someone else?' Then Philip opened his mouth, and beginning from this Scripture he preached Jesus to him" (Ac 8:29-35).

2. "Look water!" (He wanted to be baptized in water)

"And as they went along the road they came to some water; and the eunuch said, 'Look! Water! What prevents me from being baptized?' And Philip said, 'If you believe with all your heart, you may.' And he answered and said, 'I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.' And he ordered the chariot to stop; and they both went down into the water, Philip as well as the eunuch; and he baptized him" (Ac 8:26-38).

Now all the Bible said is that Philip "preached Jesus to him". But since the Eunuch asked if there was anything preventing him from being baptized, it is obvious, then, that when preaching about Jesus to others, this would include baptism. [Baptism represents the **B** in Christ's **DBR**.] Like the Eunuch, do you believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God? Were you baptized like this Ethiopian, by going down into the water? Is there anything preventing you from being baptized?

How a violent opponent of Christianity was saved

Saul was one of the Jews who was responsible for scattering [persecuting] the Jerusalem church. He put disciples in prisons and even was in favor of having them put to death, both men and women.

Note: Saul is his Hebrew name, but in the Greek, it would be Paul. This, then is the same name, but in two different languages. For example, Patrick is Pasquale in Italian. So Saul, when he became a Christian, did not get a new name nor was he given one. Getting a so called "Christian Name" is not the commandment of our Lord Jesus Christ. It is a tradition of men that does not commend us to God.

1. Saul realized Jesus is Lord

While Saul was on his way to destroy some more Christians, an amazing thing happened to him. The Lord Jesus appeared to him in a brilliant vision. But Saul did not yet know that this was Jesus, so he asked, " 'Who are You, Lord?' And He said, 'I am Jesus whom you are persecuting' " (Ac 9:5). And so Jesus informed Saul that He was the "Lord", and He also charged Saul with the sin of harming His very own body, Christians. Yet Jesus wanted to convert and use this man for a great work. He would become an eyewitness apostle. But first Jesus told him to: "Enter the city [Damascus], and it shall be told you what you must do" (Ac 9:6).

2. Saul was commanded to **call on the name of the Lord** in water baptism to be saved, not in prayer

Now God sent a Christian man named Ananias to Saul to tell him what he **"must do"** (Ac 9:10-20). First, he **"must"** be a witness for Christ. Second, he **"must"** not wait any longer to get baptized because it is the way to call on the name of the Lord to be saved. Listen, as Saul tells his own conversion story about it: **"And he [Ananias] said, 'The God of our fathers has appointed you to know His will and to see the Righteous One and to hear an utterance from His mouth. 'For you will [1] be a witness for Him to all men of what you have seen and heard. 'Now why do you delay? [2] Get up and be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on His name'"** (Ac 22:14-16). **So Paul was told to call on the name of the Lord in baptism to be forgiven, not in prayer.**

Note: It is understood that the baptizer would have done this for Saul, before baptizing him. For Jesus instructed baptizers to call on the three names of the Lord in a person's baptism, saying, **"baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit"** (Mt 28:19). This gives proper meaning to this verse: **"Whoever will call on the name of the Lord will be saved"** (Ro 10:13). The book of Acts testifies to this, for no one in it who wanted to be saved from his sins was instructed to call on the name of the Lord in prayer for salvation. They were instructed to repent and call on the name of the Lord in baptism to be saved or forgiven (SEE Ac 2:38; Mk 16:16). Now repentance is not defined as prayer, as we will see in the lesson on repentance. For some are confusing the requirement to repent for salvation with prayer for salvation.

How an army officer, his relatives, and friends were saved

"Now there was a certain man at Caesarea named Cornelius, a centurion of what was called the Italian cohort, a devout man, and one who feared God with all his household, and gave many alms to the Jewish people, and prayed to God continually" (Ac 10:1, 2). God wanted this Gentile to hear the Gospel and be saved. So He had Cornelius send for Peter, a Jew, to come to preach the Gospel to him (Ac 10:22). Cornelius gathered all his relatives and close friends in to his home and was

waiting for Peter to arrive. But while this was happening, Peter was being taught by God in a vision that the Gentiles would now be accepted by Him, through faith in Jesus Christ, and that it was now alright for a Jew to associate with a Gentile. So when the men came to bring Peter to Cornelius, Peter went without raising any objections, even though Peter was a Jew and they were Gentiles (Ac 10:9-24).

1. Peter preached the gospel to them

As Peter entered the house, Cornelius fell at his feet and worshiped him. But Peter said not to do that because he was just a man like Cornelius. After Cornelius told Peter why he sent for him, then Peter admitted that he now understood that God would accept anyone who would do His will, whether he was a Jew or a Gentile. Then Peter began to preach the gospel to all those in the house. He proclaimed to them important truths concerning Jesus Christ, such as his powerful ministry; how He healed the sick and went about doing good; how and why He was put to death and resurrected from the dead, and how those who ate with Him after He arose from the dead, the apostles, were the ones who were to be witnesses of resurrection from the dead. Likewise, Peter proclaimed to them that Jesus will judge the living and the dead, and that the forgiveness of sins can be obtained or received through Jesus Christ. Furthermore, Peter explained to them that all of the prophets testified to these things about Jesus Christ, the Messiah (Ac 10:25-48).

2. They believed, so Peter **"ordered them to be baptized"**

As these Gentiles were listening to Peter preach the gospel, God baptized those who heard it with the Holy Spirit, and they began to praise God in various languages (tongues). This amazed the

Jews who came with Peter. "Then Peter answered, 'Surely no one can refuse the water for these to be baptized who have received the Holy Spirit just as we did, can he?' And he ordered them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ" (Ac 10:46-48). So they were still required to be baptized in "water," even though, in this case, God Himself first baptized them with the Holy Spirit from above.

Note: This baptism of the Holy Spirit helped Peter, a Jew, understand that it was okay to baptize a Gentile, that God was willing to save people who were not Jews. We see God prepare Peter for this with the visions he had before Cornelius called for him. Sometimes, Peter needed some powerful persuasion from God Himself in order to actually carry out Christ's command to go into all the world with the gospel, not just the Jewish world. So this is why God baptized them with the Holy Spirit.

A business woman and her household were saved

Saul, who used to lead the charge against Christians, now was helping to lead the charge to make Christians. For example:

1. Saul [Gk. Paul] preached the gospel to some women

In Philippi, on the Sabbath, Saul went out to the river to the place of prayer. He found some women there and began to preach the gospel to them. "**And a certain woman named Lydia, from the city of Thyatira, a seller of purple fabrics, a worshiper of God, was listening; and the Lord opened her heart to respond to the things spoken**" (Ac 16:14).

2. God opened Lydia's heart to respond and she was baptized

"And when she and her household had been baptized, she urged us, saying, 'If you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come into my house and stay' " (Ac 16:15). Because they considered Lydia faithful in responding to the gospel of Jesus Christ (for she believed it and was baptized), they stayed at her house for a few days.

A Jailer's family was saved

Now Paul was met by a slave girl who had a spirit of divination. She made her masters a lot of money by fortune-telling. Yet, she followed after Paul and Silas and kept on crying out, "**These men are bond-servants of the Most High God, who are proclaiming to you the way of salvation**" (Ac 16:17). She kept doing this for many days. Paul was annoyed by this and turned around and said to her, "**I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her!**" (Ac 16:18). And it came out of her at that moment. But when her masters found out that their hope to make money was gone, they were angry with Paul and Silas and dragged them to the marketplace to the authorities. They claimed that they were throwing the city into confusion because they were Jews and were teaching customs that were not lawful for Romans to accept. So the crowd rose up against Paul and Silas. The chief authorities tore their robes off of them and began to have them beaten with rods. And after they hit them many times, they put them into prison in stocks (Ac 16:19-23).

The jailor asked, "What must I do to be saved?"

While in prison, God caused an earthquake that freed Paul and all the other prisoners, and also freed the jailor and his household from their sins! For example, "**But about midnight** Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns of praise to God, and the prisoners were listening to them; and suddenly there came a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison house were shaken; and immediately all the doors were opened and everyone's chains were unfastened. When the jailer awoke and saw the prison doors opened, he drew his sword and was about to kill himself, supposing that the prisoners had escaped. But Paul cried out with a loud

voice, saying, 'Do yourself no harm, for we are all here!' And he called for lights and rushed in and, trembling with fear, he fell down before Paul and Silas, and after he brought them out, he said, 'Sirs, what must I do to be saved?' And they said, [1] '**Believe** in the Lord Jesus, and you shall be saved, you and your household.' And they **spoke** the word of the Lord to him together with all who were in his house. And he took them that very hour of the night and [2] **washed their wounds**, and immediately he was **baptized**, he and all his household" (Ac 16:25-34).

1. One must believe that Jesus is Lord and Christ (the Messiah)

The jailer wanted to be saved, but he did not know how. So he asked Paul and Silas, "what must I do to be saved?". They wisely responded, "believe in the Lord Jesus Christ." Then both Paul and Silas proceeded to tell him and his whole household about the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ (the DBR). "They spoke the word of the Lord to him together with all who were in his house." So, the first thing one "must... do to be saved" is, after listening to the gospel of Jesus Christ, believe that Jesus is both Lord and Christ (the Messiah).

2. One must repent and be baptized

Now the Jailer must have believed in the gospel of Jesus Christ, since he responded to it by proving his repentance (he washed their wounds) and by being baptized in the name of the Lord. For example, "And he took them that very hour of the night ["around midnight" SEE vs 25] and he washed their wounds and immediately he was baptized, he and all his household". **This was a midnight conversion. It illustrates how urgent one must be in calling on the name of the Lord to be saved in baptism, even if it is in the middle of the night! He was baptized in the middle of the night!** Like the jailer, once one believes that Jesus is Lord and Christ, he should start to prove his repentance and immediately call on the name of the Lord in baptism to be saved, even if one's belief in Christ happens at night! So, calling on the name of the Lord in baptism for salvation is essential.

Do you understand how the apostles said we must be saved?

Acts shows us how the apostles of Christ made disciples from all nations, thus fulfilling what Jesus commanded them to do (SEE Mk 16:15, 16; Mt 28:18, 19; Lk 24:46-48). First, they preached the gospel (the death, burial, and resurrection of Christ) to all people, both Jews and Gentiles. For the gospel specifically is the DBR of Christ for our sins (SEE 1 Cor 15:1, 3, 4). Second, those who believed it started to repent and were led to immediately call on the name of the Lord in water baptism for the forgiveness of their sins, not in prayer. This is how they were saved by the gospel and received the hope eternal life. Likewise, this is how we can be saved today and have the hope of eternal life. *Have you heard the gospel of Jesus Christ, about His death for our sins, His burial, and His resurrection from the dead on the third day? Do you believe it? If so, like those in the book of Acts, have you started to repent of your sins and call on the name of the Lord in water baptism to be saved? If not, arrange for your water baptism very soon.*

Notes: Today, many worshipers have swerved off from how Jesus and His apostles said we must be saved. Therefore, they have had a faulty foundation ever since. For example, so very many are mistakenly led to call on the name of the Lord in prayer for salvation, not as Jesus and the apostles said, in repentance and baptism (SEE Mk 16:15, 16; Ac 2:37, 38). Yet, if you realize that your own foundation has a fault in it, you can repair it. Simply submit to, undergo, or follow the disciple-making pattern recorded in the book of the Acts of the apostles. First, do it right yourself. Call on the name of the Lord in repentance and water baptism for your salvation, not in prayer. Second, show others how to do it right. Yet, in response to this lesson, someone might say, "I was baptized." Yes, but did you call on the name of the Lord in prayer for salvation or in water baptism? If it was in prayer, not in your baptism, then you should redo it in water baptism. This is how you do it right. You must repent and do it properly to be considered righteous, not unrighteous. Fulfill righteousness, not unrighteousness.

Paul made other disciples: (a) When he was in Berea, he went into the synagogue and began to reason with them that Jesus was the Messiah. Because of this, "Many of them therefore believed, along with a number of prominent Greek women and men" (Ac 17:12). (b) Later, when he was in Athens, he began to proclaim Jesus and the resurrection to the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers. These philosophers took Paul to the Areopagus [Mars Hill], which was a place where people spent their time in nothing other than telling and hearing something new. After Paul preached to them about the resurrection of the dead, some began to sneer, but others wanted to hear him speak again about this. "So Paul went out of their midst. But some men joined him and believed, among whom also were Dionysius the Areopagite and a woman named Damaris and others with them" (Ac 17:33, 34). (c) At Corinth, he helped a Jewish synagogue ruler and his family, as well as many of the Corinthians to become disciples. "And Crispus, the leader of the synagogue, believed in the Lord with all his household, and many of the Corinthians when they heard were believing and being baptized" (Ac 18:8). (d) When he went to Ephesus, he helped some of John's disciples obey the correct baptism. They had only been baptized with John's baptism. Therefore, Paul pointed out that John told the people to believe in the one coming after him, that is in Jesus. They must have believed what Paul said because: "When they heard this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus" (Ac 19:5). So they were led by Paul to call on the name of the Lord to be saved in water baptism, not in prayer.

We can be saved by the grace [favor] of God

"By grace you have been saved through faith" (Eph 2:8)

An Introduction to Grace

God truly did us a favor when He saved us from our sins through His Son. For the word **"grace" means "favor"**. So when it says, **"By grace you have been saved" (Eph 2:8)**, it means that God has saved us by His favor. He will favor us, eternally, for believing that Christ died for our sins, was buried, and raised from the dead on the third day (this is the gospel 1 Cor 15:1, 3, 4). By faith in the gospel of His dear Son, he will favor us, so much so that, one day, He will raise us from the dead, just like He raised His Son from the dead, to receive eternal life and live forever with Him and His Son in heaven (The gospel tells us what and whom God will favor, and the reasons why). For an example of being saved by grace, consider Noah. **"But Noah found favor [grace] in the eyes of the Lord" (Ge 6:8)**. Why did Noah find grace in the sight of God but not the rest of the world? **"Enter the ark, you and all your household, for you alone I have seen to be righteous before Me in this time" (Ge 7:1)**. So God saved Noah by His grace, because Noah was righteous, but the rest of the world was not. So God favors righteousness, but His wrath, the opposite of His grace, is what the unrighteous will receive.

Note: For **"grace would reign through righteousness to eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord" (Ro 5:21)**, not through unrighteousness. So God's favor will only rule over us to cause us to receive eternal life if we become righteous through the gospel of His Son. But it will not rule over the unrighteous. Just like in the days of Noah, God's grace does not cover the unrighteous, only the righteous. Indeed, the wrath of God rules over the unrighteous. God does not favor unrighteousness. Therefore, the unrighteous will not be saved (1 Cor 6:9). But we can avoid God's wrath by believing in His Son. This He will favor, eternally. Amen.



Can you swim across the ocean in one hour?

We must consider both the grace and the wrath of God

Jesus did not come to the earth to only preach about the grace of God. Indeed, He preached a lot about the wrath of God, with heaven representing the final grace of God, and hell representing His final wrath, along with whom would go to each place, and the reasons why (now when we are saved by grace, we are saved from the wrath of God to come on the unrighteous). For Christ Jesus came **"To proclaim the favorable [grace] year of the Lord And the day of vengeance [wrath] of our God" (Isa 61:2)**. Indeed, so did the apostles. For example, Paul said, **"Do not be conceited, but fear; for if God did not spare the natural branches, He will not spare you, either. Behold then the kindness [grace] and severity [wrath] of God; to those who fell, severity, but to you, God's kindness, if you continue in His kindness [grace]; otherwise you also will be cut off" (Ro 11:20-22)**. So, when studying the gospel, we need to fully consider both the grace and the wrath of God, and who or what He favors or wraths, and then learn to **"continue in"** what He favors. Otherwise, as He said to the Christians at the church in Rome, He will cut us off, just like He did to the Jews; wrath! So let us endeavor to stay in the good graces of God.

Three things we must know about God's grace

The whole New Covenant is the good news of God's grace, that is, the gospel of what He now favors. For example, Paul said, **"But I do not consider my life of any account as dear to myself, so that I may finish my course and the ministry which I received from the Lord Jesus, to testify solemnly of the gospel of the grace [favor] of God" (Ac 20:24).** And when Paul and Barnabas testified solemnly to some Jews about this grace, **"Many of the Jews... were urging them to continue in the grace of God" (Ac 13:43).** I hope you have that same desire to hear more about what God now favors, as revealed in the gospel of Jesus Christ. But, as you will see in this lesson, there are three main points about God's grace in which we need to come to firmly believe.

1. First and foremost, being saved by grace means that you yourself cannot earn salvation. No one is good enough, and never will be, to earn, win, or merit their own salvation (SEE Ro 3:23, 24).

2. Being saved by grace does not exclude your own obedience to the message of Christ for salvation. So, one must **"obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ"** to avoid the penalty of hell and instead obtain the reward eternal salvation in heaven (READ 2 Thess 1:8, 9; He 5:9). **So when you obey the gospel to be saved, you are not earning your salvation, you are obeying it for salvation.** For God does not save rebels!

3. Being saved by grace means that no other law, covenant, or will can save you except the gospel of the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ. So, for example, no one can be saved by keeping the Old Testament Law of Moses (Ro 10:4).

Note: The grace of God instructs us how to live (SEE Titus 2:11-14). So then we cannot live the way we choose. Finally, since many are turning the grace of God into "licentiousness" (READ Jude 1:4), meaning no rules or regulations, we must learn the difference between what God truly favors and what He does not. To help us to do this, at the end of this lesson on grace, I have included a brief True vs. False Grace comparative study. It is based on Peter's letter in which he exhorts us to contend for what God truly favors, saying, **"This is the true grace of God. Stand firm in it!" (1 Pe 5:12).**

1. You yourself cannot somehow earn it

"I am not good enough to save, but God is good enough to save me through the gospel. I did not earn my salvation. Christ earned it for me on His cross! God is simply doing me a favor by saving my soul through obedient faith in His Son (in His DBR for my sins)." *Rick David, Author*

(a) Salvation is only possible with God

The disciples once asked Jesus, **"Who can be saved?" (Mt 19:25).** He said, **"With men this is impossible but with God all things are possible" (Mt 19:26).** Just like no man can get into outer space without the power of a spaceship, no man can get into heaven and live forever without the powerful grace of God. It is like if you tried to jump from the earth into heaven. You would quickly realize that you cannot jump your way in to heaven. At best, you could only get a couple feet off of the ground. You do not have enough leg power to even come close to getting yourself into heaven. You need the power of God's grace to take you there.

It is like if we all lined up at the edge of a basketball court to see who could broad jump the farthest, in one jump. Although some of us would jump farther than others, we all still would fall so very short of reaching the other side of the court! **"For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, being justified as a gift by His grace through the redemption which is in Christ Jesus" (Ro 3:23, 24).** We all fall so very short of the glory of God, since we all sinned. But Christ did not sin. He did not fall short of

the glory of God. For He is God the Son! Amen. In conclusion, no one can even come close to earning or winning his own salvation and eternal life. God will only reward us with it, freely "as a gift," if we, through obedient faith, believe that Christ died for our sins, was buried, and raised on the third day.

(b) Salvation is a free gift from God, received through faith

We are "being justified as a gift by His grace" (Ro 3:24), through faith. "For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of God; not as a result of works, that no one should boast. For we are His workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works" (Eph 2:8-10).

So our salvation is not a result of our own good works, such as charity work, giving, or any other use of a talent or ability which were given to us by God, for good works. Though we must put our talents to work for God (Mt 25), He will not save us based on them, but based on Christ's talent to save. Our talents were not crucified for us, Christ was. So salvation is a result of God's power and good work in Christ Jesus. In this way, God has made sure that absolutely no one of us, though talented, can brag about obtaining salvation, since Christ obtained it for us and offers it to us a gift, if we are humble enough to receive it, through faith. It takes no "talent" to be saved.

Paul called salvation: "the free gift... the gift by the grace of the one man, Jesus" (Ro 5:15). Did Adam earn his wife, or was she a gift from God? Adam could not have chosen her,

made her, or worked for her. She was a gift from God. God made her and brought her to Adam. Likewise, God made salvation and brought it to us. Can you buy something that is free? You would be foolish to try to buy something that is offered to you for free. Something that God says is free cannot be bought. Man cannot buy salvation with anything because Jesus already bought it for him by the pouring out of His blood. He paid the price for man's salvation in 33 A.D. So you must allow Jesus to save you. You must accept salvation as a gift that has already been bought and is waiting on the shelf for you to receive it, by faith. Truly, truly, and literally, God did us a favor [a grace] when He saved us through His Son's work on the cross.

In conclusion, you do not have enough riches to buy your own salvation, enough wisdom to reason your own salvation, or enough power or strength to win your own salvation. No one can earn salvation by their own money, wisdom, or strength. It is only through the riches, wisdom, and powerful grace of one man that souls can be saved. We cannot earn salvation. We can only receive it as a gift from God, through faith. And as you will see below, the definition of faith includes obedience.

2. Grace does not exclude obedience for salvation

(a) Jesus will only save those who obey Him

While it is very true (100% true, absolutely true), that no one can earn or merit their own salvation, since Christ earned or merited it for us by His gospel (SEE Ro 3:23, 24), it is also very true that we must obey

the gospel to be saved. God does not save rebels by His grace, since He does not favor [grace] rebellion. Indeed, His wrath will be upon all those who disobey the gospel.

For example, “Those who [1] do not **know God** and... those who [2] **do not obey the gospel** of our Lord Jesus... **will pay the penalty of eternal destruction**” (2 Thess 1:8, 9). This verse makes it clear that the penalty of everlasting destruction, which is the lake of fire, hell, will be given to all people who do not know God and obey the gospel of Jesus Christ. Likewise, “He became to **all** those who **obey** Him the source of **eternal salvation**” (He 5:9). Jesus will only give eternal life to those who obey Him. So we must obey to be saved. But when we obey the gospel to be saved, we are not earning it, we are simply obeying it to be saved.

(b) The true definition of “Faith” includes obedience

Sure, “For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that **whoever believes** in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life” (Jn 3:16). Yet, in this very same passage or context, near the end, it says, “He who **believes** in the Son has eternal life; but **he who does not obey** the Son shall not see life, but the **wrath of God abides on him**” (Jn 3:36). So this very often quoted passage (Jn 3:16) defines belief to include obedience. It teaches that if we want to see life, eternal life, we must not just have a belief in Jesus, but an obedient belief in what Jesus taught.

Indeed, the gospel “has been made known to all the nations, leading to **obedience of faith**” (Ro 16:26).

Again, Paul said he “**received grace and apostleship to bring about the obedience of faith among all**” (Ro 1:5). So we cannot separate obedience from faith, since the holy Scriptures do not separate obedience from faith. Obedience is an inseparable element, quality, or characteristic of faith.

So he who says that he believes in God and Jesus yet does not carry out His words is like a prisoner who thinks the guards are taking him to be set free from his prison cell, when instead they are taking him to be put to death for his crimes. Likewise, “He who **believes** in the Son has eternal life; but **he who does not obey** the Son shall not see life, but the **wrath of God abides on him**” (Jn 3:36). To avoid the wrath of God, our definition of belief must include obedience.

In conclusion, while it is true that no one can earn salvation, everyone must obey the gospel, by faith to be saved. And when we obey the gospel, in the way that Jesus and His apostles commanded, we are not earning our salvation. We are simply obeying it for our salvation. God does not save rebels!

3. We cannot earn it by obeying Mosaic Age Laws

(a) We can be saved without following Moses’ Law

Indeed, this point becomes very clear when some Jewish Christians were trying to require some Gentile Christians to keep a certain part of Moses’ Law in order to be saved. They confidently taught, “Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved”

(Ac 15:1). In response to their badly mistaken teaching on salvation, Peter, an apostle of Christ, opposed them in a very important and distinct way. For he said to them, **“Now therefore why do you put God to the test by placing upon the neck of the disciples a yoke [Mosaic Age Law] which neither our fathers nor we have been able to bear? But we believe that we are saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus”** (Ac 15:10, 11).

So Peter said that it would put God to the test to require disciples to keep Moses' Law to be saved, because in truth, “we are saved by the grace of the Lord Jesus,” not Moses. For as you will clearly see in the next point, Christ, the Messiah, is the end of the Law of Moses (Ro 10:4).

(b) There was a yoke change (a change in covenants)

Jesus said, **“Take My yoke upon you”** (Mt 11:29), not Moses' yoke. Peter said it himself: **“Now therefore why do you put God to the test by placing upon the neck of the disciples a yoke [Mosaic Age Law] which neither our fathers nor we have been able to bear?”** (Ac 15:10).

This is why Paul taught the church in Rome, saying, **“You are not under law [Mosaic Age Law], but under grace [the Gospel of Jesus Christ]”** (Ro 6:14). In another place, he told them, **“Christ is the end of the law [Mosaic Age Law]”** (Ro 10:4). We are in the Christian or Messianic Age, not the Mosaic Age. Christ fulfilled or completed Moses' Law, the Mosaic Age or covenant (SEE Mt 5:17). We must now follow Christ, not Moses. Just like John the Baptist said of Christ, **“He must increase, but I must decrease”** (Jn 3:20), likewise,

Moses must decrease, and Christ must increase. We must follow Jesus' words, not Moses' words. For Moses' Law was designed to be a temporary tutor to Israel, to prepare and lead the Jews to the Messiah (Gal 3:23-25).

Yet it is evident that certain commands in Moses' Law were also commanded by Jesus and His apostles and prophets in the New Covenant. For example, in the Ten Commandments, Moses said, actually God said, not to commit adultery. Jesus and the apostles also taught against committing adultery. Indeed, they even made it more utterly clear what adultery truly is. And so Christians must not commit the sin of adultery. Yet we must put Christ's yoke on disciples, not Moses' yoke.

(c) Judge not with Moses' Law

Peter clearly warned us not to put God to the test, meaning provoke Him to wrath, by requiring disciples to keep Moses' Law to be saved (Ac 15:10, 11). In other words, no one should tell Christians that they are sinning or lost if they do not obey, keep, or practice Mosaic Age Laws, including the Sabbath, which was specifically commanded, and only commanded in Moses' Law.

The gospel of God's grace makes this specific point about the Sabbath, and other related things, very clear. For example, **“He [Jesus] made you alive together with Him, having forgiven us all our transgressions, having canceled out the certificate of debt [Mosaic Age Laws] consisting of decrees against us and which was hostile to us; and He has taken it out of the way, having nailed it [Mosaic Age Law] to the cross... Therefore let no one act as your judge [condemn you] in regard to food or drink or in respect to a festival or a new moon or a Sabbath day”** (Col 2:13, 14, 16).

So Christians do not have to keep **“a Sabbath,”** or festivals, such as, the Passover, and the food laws. Christ

"nailed" the Sabbath, the festivals, and the food laws, indeed, the entire Law of Moses, to His cross. Christ "canceled" these things, because as you will see below, He fulfilled or completed these things, perfectly. So you must "let no one act as your judge," meaning condemn you or speak against you, for not keeping Moses' Law, even "a Sabbath". But Christians are commanded to go to church with a purpose, such as to somehow encourage and motivate other Christians to be more loving and devoted to good works (He 10:24, 25). These are two things we have need to work on continually!

(d) Jesus fulfilled the Law of Moses for you (and us), perfectly, so that you would not have to do so

Christ said that He, not you, is the fulfillment or completion of the Law of Moses (SEE Mt 5:17). "For what the Law [Mosaic Age Law] could not do, weak as it was through the flesh, God did; sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and as an offering for sin, He condemned sin in the flesh, in order that the requirement of the Law [Mosaic Age Law] might be fulfilled in us" (Ro 8:3, 4).

So Jesus' death on the cross "fulfilled" the "requirement of the Law" for us, specifically in satisfying the blood sacrifice requirements of the Law of Moses for us by His crucifixion. So a Christian should not try to fulfill any of the requirements of the Law of Moses, since Christ met them fully and perfectly for us with His cross. That was His cross to bear, not ours. It would be foolish to try to fulfill something that has already been fulfilled by another for you. Thank you Jesus! It was His yoke to bear, not ours.

(e) You are lost if you justify yourself with Moses' Law

Paul wrote a letter to the church in Galatia to deter them from following Moses' Law, for good reason. Christ died to fulfill or complete the Law of Moses for us (SEE Mt 5:17; Ro 8:3, 4). So to keep Moses' Law would disrespect what Christ did in fulfilling it. This would demonstrate lack of key saving knowledge about what Christ did, the saving work of Christ.

So, with many different points, Paul tried to persuade the church in Galatia, and us, that no one can be right with God by keeping Moses' Law. For example, in addition to his point that Law of Moses was simply to be a temporary tutor to lead the Jews to receive Christ (Gal 3:23-25), he said this: "For if righteousness comes through the Law [the Law of Moses], then Christ died needlessly" (Ga 2:21). "You have been severed from Christ, you who are seeking to be justified by law [the Law of Moses]; you have fallen from grace" (Ga 5:4). There is nothing worse than falling from God's favor, His grace; falling out of favor with God (by keeping Moses' Law). There is nothing worse than being "severed" (cut off) from the Messiah, since it leads to the lake of fire! So we are lost in sin if we try to keep Moses' Law to be right or justified or saved. But we seek to be justified and saved by the gospel of God's grace, through faith.

Christ nailed the Law of Moses to His cross, canceling it, by fulfilling or completing it for us (SEE Col 2:14; Mt 5:17). "And now I commend you to the word of His grace, which is able to build you up and to give you the inheritance among all those who are sanctified" (Ac 20:32). "We also urge you not to receive the grace of God in vain" (2 Cor 6:1). So be it, amen.

An Advanced Lesson on Grace: Grace Instructs Us How to Live

The gospel of God's grace does more than just save us, it teaches us how to live. For example: "The grace of God has appeared, bringing salvation to all men, instructing us [teaching us] to [1] deny ungodliness and worldly desires and [2] to live sensibly, righteously and godly in the present age, [3] looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior, Christ Jesus; who gave Himself for us, that He might redeem us from every lawless deed and purify for Himself a people for His own possession, [4] zealous for good deeds" (Titus 2:11-14). There are four ways in which God's grace teaches how to live.

1. Live in denial of ungodliness and worldly desires

"The grace of God has appeared... instructing us to deny ungodliness and worldly desires" (Titus 2:11, 12). Abstinence, self-denial, is the true way of the grace of God. For example, "Abstain from fleshly lusts which wage war against the soul... This is the true grace of God. Stand firm in it" (1 Pe 2:11; 5:12). Now "fleshly lusts" and "worldly desires" are simply forms of "sensuality", and Jesus called sensuality "evil" (Mk 7:22). He condemned it. Sensuality, fleshly lusts, is the exact opposite of spirituality. We are to be a spiritual people, not a sensual people. Sensuality abounds in this world, in the media, in the way in which people adorn themselves, in the way that people entertain themselves, in the way that people talk, and more. And to our regret, many disciples are led by this unholy spirit, they are sensual, not spiritual, not only in their daily living, but also in their sensual forms of worshiping of God.

But by the grace of God, we must not participate in, go along with, pay for, use, be entertained by, or act like this sensual, unholy world cannot affect us, or that the world can go in one ear and right out the other ear without harming us. Instead, grace bluntly tells us: "Do not participate with the unfruitful deeds of darkness, but instead even expose them" (Eph 5:11). The sensual world will deaden, numb, and create an unholy people. If you think that you can learn something good from watching, listening to, participating in, or paying for the world's lack of godliness and their misplaced sensual desires (in all its various forms), woo to you; woo to you! "Nevertheless, the firm foundation of God stands, having this seal, 'The Lord knows those who are His,' and, 'Everyone who names the name of the Lord is to abstain from wickedness'" (2 Tim 2:19). Abstinence, self-denial, is the firm foundation of the grace of God. We must turn away from evil, not towards it. We must abstain from the sensual desires in the world. Do not participate in any form of sensuality. Live in abstinence.

2. Live sensibly, righteously, and godly

"The grace of God has appeared... instructing us... to live [1] sensibly, [2] righteously and [3] godly in the present age" (Titus 2:11, 12). First, the world is not living "sensibly" (it does not make good sense, it lives senselessly). "And they, having become callous [senseless], have given themselves over to sensuality for the practice of every kind of impurity with greediness. But you did not learn Christ in this way" (Eph 4:19, 20). So the first thing which God's grace tries to get us to "learn" is to be sensible, not senseless regarding the sensual nature of this world. We need to be a people of spirituality, not sensuality, for our God is spiritual, the Holy Spirit. He is not the sensual spirit which is in the world, whom the multitudes follow and enjoy. And so we learn that "older men are to be... sensible... older women... young women... be sensible. Likewise urge the young men to be sensible" (Titus 2:2-6), especially in regards to what is spiritual vs. sensual. Second, the world is not living "righteously" (it is living unrighteously in sin). "For all unrighteousness is sin" (1 Jn 5:17). So the grace of God teaches us to be righteous, for we know that the unrighteous (sinners) will not inherit the kingdom of God (SEE 1 Cor 6:9). "Grace might reign through righteousness" (Ro 5:21), not unrighteousness, not through sin. God does not favor [grace] what

is wrong (sin), but only what is right. This is why we need to repent of our sins. God does not favor sin. He only forgives us if it if we repent of it and quit doing it. He only saves the righteous, not the unrighteous. Consider Noah. He "found favor", grace, in the sight of God because God said, "You alone I have seen to be righteous before me in this time" (Ge 6:8; 7:1). Yet the whole world was destroyed by a flood for its unrighteousness, its sin. And so they were destroyed in God's wrath for continuing in sin, for he waited a long time for the world to repent while Noah was building the ark (1 Pe 3:20). Third, the world is not living "godly" (it is ungodly). Simply and profoundly said, to live godly means to live like God would live on the earth, godly, like God. For example, "Put on the new self, which is the likeness of God has been created in [1] righteousness and [2] holiness of the truth" (Eph 4:24). First, God is righteous, so our "new self" needs to be like His "righteousness". Second, God is holy, so our "new self" needs to be like His "holiness". Indeed, we need to live a holy life. For "God... has saved us and called us to a holy life" (NIV 2 Tim 1:8, 9). So after we get saved through the gospel of Jesus Christ, we need to learn how to live a holy life. Indeed, it is the reason why He saved us in the first place. You can study the kind of holy life God wants us to live in *The Bible Study on New Life, 'Walk in Newness of Life'* (Ro 6:4), *What Our Duties Are After Personal Salvation*.

3. Live in expectation of Jesus' return

"The grace of God has appeared... instructing us... to live... looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of our great God and Savior, Christ Jesus" (Titus 2:11-13). For example, the disciples in Thessalonica were taught by God's grace to wait for Jesus to return. Paul said to them: "You turned to God from idols to serve a living and true God, and to wait for His Son from heaven" (1 Thess 1:9, 10). So they learned to look for the blessed hope of Christ's appearing.

Note: In the 1990's, I went to Kenya, Africa with my father in law, Paul, and mother in law, Naomi, to visit some disciples in the Thika area, north of Nairobi. [Paul's family had served the Lord in Kenya for three years in the late 1960's.] Paul had helped to make some of these disciples there, in what was called, Location 4, and had returned from time to time from America to see how they were. So we had come to see how they were. For me, it was a very memorable visit, simply because it was my first of several visits to Africa, and second because of certain women and men at Location 4. When we arrived there, which was a rural area, we found the hut of the Christian woman for whom we were looking. She greeted us in the Lord, and welcomed us into her home. Then she and another woman had us sit down on a bench in the hut, and they began to wash our feet. Then, suddenly, a young man came into the hut, of about 17 years of age, a son of one of the women, and a disciple. The first thing he said, after greeting us, was, "I am still waiting for Jesus to come back." He said this with a sober confidence. Then he led out in spiritual song, along with the women, while they continued to wash our feet. The grace of God had taught this young man to wait for Jesus to come back. Upon greeting other disciples, even when they are strangers, do you tell them of your faith in Christ's return? Are you, like this young man, telling others that you are still waiting for Jesus to come back? Are you looking forward to His blessed appearing? Let the grace of God set your mind on this one thing from above, Him who is returning for you from above. I myself testify to you that I am looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ. Come Lord Jesus. Amen.

4. Live zealous for good deeds

"The grace of God has appeared... instructing us... to live... zealous for good deeds" (Titus 2:11, 12, 14). The word "zealous" means to be boiling hot, the word means to boil, the highest temperature of something. So turn up the heat! Get zealous! When it comes to good deeds, be a hot potato! The word "good" means choice, outstanding, or excellent. So the grace of God teaches us to be intensely hot after the very best things that we can do for others, like our families, our brethren, our communities, our nation, and the world.

Note: Having many children, I myself am striving to raise them up for good works, by the grace of God. I instruct them to do something good with their lives, something excellent, something choice that helps people with their needs, especially their own families' needs. There are a lot of things to do in life, a lot of callings, a lot of works, but there are certain works which are truly excellent. Do something that helps your people the most. Don't just do "something" in life, do something excellent. What are your good deeds? Are you an excellent son or daughter? Are you an excellent husband or wife? Are you an excellent parent? Are you an excellent teacher of the word? Are you an excellent midwife? Are you an excellent doctor or dentist? Are you an excellent help? These are examples of choice works or callings. Are you zealous for a good work? Christ was zealous for His calling and role in life, and it was an excellent calling. Where is your passion? Are you filled with compassion? Are you doing something excellent for the needs of your family, friends, or community? If not, plan on it!

True Grace vs. False Grace

Peter said, "I have written to you briefly, exhorting and testifying that this is the true grace of God. Stand firm in it!" (1 Pe 5:12). Yet, many teach or follow a false grace, and stand firm in it! For example, below, consider what Peter said is true about the grace of God and how many Christians oppose it (and him), on every point in his true grace letter.

True Grace Says

1. You are Alienated from the World (1 Pe 1:1, 2:11)
Supporting Verses: READ Ja 4:4,5; 1 Jn 2:15-17; He 11:13
2. You Are Chosen to Obey (1 Pe 1:1, 2:9)
Jude 4; Ro 6:1,2; He 10:26, 27
3. You Are Born Again for a Heavenly Hope (1 Pe 1:3-5)
He 11:16
4. God Will Test Your Faith in Him (1 Pe 1:6, 7; 4:12, 17, 18)
He 11:17; Ex 15:25
5. You Are Saved by Your Faith in Jesus (1 Pe 1:8, 9)
Eph 2:8-10
6. Be Sober, Ready, Prepared (1 Pe 1:13; 4:7; 5:8)
Eph 5:4, 18; 1 Thess 5:6-8
7. Be a Non-Conformist to Evil (1 Pe 1:14-16)
Ro 12:2; 2 Tim 2:19; He 11:23
8. Live in Reverent Fear of God (1 Pe 1:17-19)
He 11:7
9. You Are Living in the End Times (1 Pe 1:20; 4:7-10)
2 Pe 3:3-18
10. Be Purified by Obedience to Truth (1 Pe 1:22)
1 Jn 3:1-3; 1 Co 9:21; He 8:10
11. Do Not Come as You Are [to God] (1 Pe 2:1)
"Turn to God", i.e. come to God, with "repentance"/change Ac 26:20 / 20:21
12. Long for Spiritual Things/Words (1 Pe 2:2)
2 Pe 1:8, 11
13. Offer Up Spiritual Sacrifices (1 Pe 2:5)
Offer to God a living sacrifice Ro 12:1
14. Proclaim the Excellencies of God (1 Pe 2:9)
Ro 10:9; Mk 8:38; Mt 28:18, 19; Mk 16:15, 16
15. Abstain from Fleshly Passions/Lusts (1 Pe 2:11; 4:2-4)
Ro 6:13
16. Live an Excellent Godly Life before Sinners
(a) Good Deeds Living (1 Pe 2:12)
(b) Submissive Living (1 Pe 2:13, 17, 18; 3:1; 5:5)
(c) Non-Ornamental, Simple Living (1 Pe 3:3, 4; 1 Ti 2:9, 10 / **not** with)
(d) Considerate Living (1 Pe 3:7)
(e) Non-Violent, Non-Retaliatory Living (1 Pe 3:9; Mt 5:44; Ro 12:19)
17. Baptism Now Saves You (1 Pe 3:21, 22)
Peter said, "baptism now saves you... through the resurrection of Jesus" the DBR; Mk 16:16
18. Judgment Day Is Coming (1 Pe 4:5)
Ro 14:10-12
19. It Is Difficult to Be Saved (1 Pe 4:18)
1 Pe 3:19, 20; Jesus said door narrow/few find it; Many called/few chosen.
20. Only Qualified Older Men Should Pastor (1 Pe 5:1, 2)
Ac 20:17-31; 1 Tim 2:12-15, 3:1-7; Titus 1:5-16
21. Humble Yourself towards Others (1 Pe 5:5, 6)
Job 10:15; Jesus Said to Take the Least Seat
22. Pray to God Because He Cares for You (1 Pe 5:7)
23. Give Holy Affection to Christians (1 Pe 5:14)
Ro 16:16; 1 Jn 2:7; 1 Cor 16:24

False Grace Says

1. You are a Friend of the World
Some want to be a friend to the world to the extent that they become God's enemy.
2. You Are Chosen, "Irresistibly" Chosen
Some teach, if chosen, then it has nothing to do with obedience, or even believing.
3. You Are Born Again for an Earthly Hope
J.W.'s teach you will not go to heaven, they believe earth will not be destroyed.
4. God Will Not Test Your Faith
I actually heard a preacher teach this from a Church of Christ. I corrected him.
5. You Are Saved by Your Good Works
Apparently, the Catholics have traditionally adhered to some form of this.
6. Be Silly, Play the Fool; Get Intoxicated
Today, we have many silly, laughable, comedic religious men in America.
7. Go with the Flow, Even if It's Evil
Obviously, many are tempted to please men over God.
8. Have No Fear, Especially of God
How many people, even worshipers, live without the fear of the Lord?
9. The End Is Not Near (All Things Will Continue)
Some will mock the very idea of the return of Christ, until it actually happens!
10. You Are Pure, No Law to Obey
Some think Christ has no law or "obeying truth" is not required for purity before God.
11. Come as You Are (He Loves You the Way You Are)
How many people are teaching this today?
12. Long for Sensual Things/Words
Today, how many people's true God is their very own desires?
13. Offer Up Material Sacrifices
How many do this instead of sacrificing their behavior or lifestyle? How many are holy?
14. Keep Your Religion to Yourself
How many unbelievers, and worshipers, think Christianity is a private matter?
15. Live a Little/Indulge Yourself (sensually)
I heard a church secretary say this when she planned for some sort of sensual adornment.
16. Participate with Sinners
(a) Bad Deeds Living
(b) Rebellious Living
(c) Queenly/Kingly Adorned Living
(d) Living for Yourself
(e) Eye for an Eye, Tooth for Tooth Pay-Back Living, Revenge
17. Baptism Does Not Save You
Obviously, many teach this, since they have not been baptized for the right reason.
18. It's Coming, But You Will Not Have to Go
I have heard a preacher, with Ph.D., teach this in a Bible Church.
19. It Is Easy to Be Saved
I heard a pastor of a large church in Philadelphia, Pa say this to the members.
20. Have Degree Can Pastor
How many are "pastoring" today who do not meet the written requirements?
21. Exalt Yourself before Others, Stride w/ Pride, Flaunt It
I heard a church camp counselor teach her girls how to strut their stuff as they walked.
22. He's Too Busy, or Doesn't Care (So Don't Pray)
I once encouraged a needy "religious" man to pray, but he said something like this. Stunning!
23. Don't Show Any Affection or Show Lustful Affection
Many are not at all warm and affectionate towards each other. Many are just plain stiff!

We can be saved by faith toward God

"Saved by grace, through faith" (Eph 2:8)

The Benefits of Faith

Most importantly, the greatest benefit of faith toward God is the salvation of one's soul from hell. For example, "Though you have not seen Him [Christ] you love Him, and though you do not see him now, but believe in Him, you greatly rejoice with joy inexpressible and full of glory, obtaining as the outcome of your faith the salvation of your souls" (1 Pe 1:8, 9). There are more benefits of faith toward God which are revealed in Hebrews chapter eleven. For example, it is how to get God's approval, not His scorn. "For by it [faith] the men of old gained approval... gained approval through their faith" (He 11:2, 39). It is how to become righteous before God, not unrighteous. "By faith Abel offered to God a better sacrifice than Cain, through which he obtained the testimony that he was righteous" (He 11:4). "By faith Noah... became an heir of the righteousness which is according to faith" (He 11:7). It is the only way to please God. "By faith Enoch was taken up so that he would not see death... for he obtained the witness that before his being taken up he was pleasing to God. And without faith it is impossible to please Him" (He 11:5, 6). "My righteous one will live by faith; and if he shrinks back, My soul has no pleasure in him" (He 10:38). It is how to obtain the rewards of God. "He who comes to God must believe that He is and that He is a rewarder of those who seek Him" (He 11:6). It is how to make God proud of us, not ashamed of us. "God is not ashamed to be called their God" (He 11:16). [since they welcomed God's promises from afar by faith]

Faith comes by listening to the message of Jesus Christ Ro 10:17



Faith comes by listening to the message of Jesus Christ

"Faith comes from hearing, and hearing by the word of Christ" (Ro 10:17). So if you have heard the Gospel of Jesus Christ, then you have had the opportunity to have faith, that is to have faith toward God. But just listening to the gospel, hearing alone, is no guarantee that you will have faith toward God and all its associated benefits. For example, "Indeed we have had good news preached to us, just as they also [the Israelites]; but the word they heard did not profit them because it was not united by faith in those who heard" (He 4:2). They doubted the good news.

Therefore, when a person hears the Gospel of Jesus Christ, it is beneficial to him only if he trusts the words that it contains. Otherwise he has doubt. But faith is the opposite of doubt. For example, and for definition, "Faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the conviction of things not seen" (He 11:1). So faith means to be assured, convinced, and persuaded about the hope of the gospel.

You Must Show Others Your Faith in God

People who have faith are people who prove it or show it to others; they have action. You must show your faith to others. If you truly have it, you cannot hide it. James said, **"I will show you my faith by my works"** (Ja 2:18). And, **"You believe that God is one. You do well; the demons also believe, and shudder. But are you willing to recognize, you foolish fellow, that faith without works is useless?"** (Ja 2:19, 20). So you are a lazy fool if you think that you can believe and have no faithful work to go along with it. That faith is like the faith of demons, and they shudder. Why do they shudder? It is because they are doomed. They know that God is real and that He will give them the ultimate penalty, the fire of hell. So it is not good enough to say that you have faith in God or that you know who God is or that you believe that He is one. Do you doubt what I am saying? Listen to this: There is only one place in the N.T. which says we are saved by **"faith alone"**, but it is preceded by the words **"not by"**. Here it is: **"A man is justified [saved] by works and not by faith alone"** (Ja 2:24).

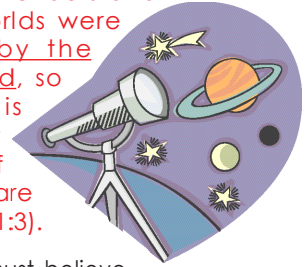
In regards to your faith, are you justified or are you still unjustified? For an answer, consider your faithful works or lack thereof. You must back up your talk of faith with works of faith. How? By your obedience to a certain command, by your trust in a certain promise, by your repentance from a sin that leads to death, by your turning away from evil, and by many other faithful acts, you must show your faith toward God. **"For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision means anything, but faith working through love"** (Ga 5:6). According to Paul, a meaningful faith is a working faith. Do you have a meaningful faith? If not, get busy with the commands of the Lord Jesus. Next, study God-approved examples of how to show your faith to God and others.

APPROVED Examples of How to Show Your Faith

You should want to have a great faith. Hebrews chapter eleven lists men and women who were examples of great faith. God commended them for it (He 11:2, 39). Next study and imitate the kind of faith found in these examples.

1. Believe that God's word created the heavens and earth

"By faith we understand that the worlds were prepared by the word of God, so that what is seen was not made out of things which are visible" (He 11:3).



By faith we must believe that God created the heavens and the earth out of nothing but His powerful word, for in the beginning, **"God said... and it was so"**. Now the word of God is truth (Jn 17:17). Truth is fact. So then the word of God is not a theory because theories are guesses, estimates, speculations, or opinions. Theories are not based on well established and evident facts or eyewitness testimony. So then, by faith you must reject any theory on the origin of the world or man, including the Big Bang Theory and the Theory of Evolution. For evolution is fundamentally opposed to the Genesis creation account. It excludes God from the picture. It says we came from apes or microorganisms. This contradicts the truth that man was made in the image of God.

And when you do reject these theories, and only accept what God said about the origin of the worlds, then you are demonstrating the kind of faith that God approves of. God will not approve of belief in any theory estimated by man to account for the origin of the worlds. He only approves of belief in one account of the origin of the worlds, His own as recorded in Genesis. By faith you cannot say that the Genesis chapter one creation account is a theory because theories are not well established and evident truths. Creation is not a theory, it is the truth of God's word.

2. Give to God some of your very best

"By faith Abel offered to God a better sacrifice than Cain, through which he obtained the testimony that he was righteous, God testifying about his gifts" (He 11:4).

Both Cain and his brother Abel made an offering to the Lord (Ge 4:1-16). But God only approved of Abel's offering, not Cain's. God had no regard for it or for Cain. There was something not worth respecting about Cain's offering. It just was not the kind of offering with which God would be pleased. It was not good enough. So God told Cain he did not do well in his offering (Ge 4:7). And since he did not do well in his offering, God then told Cain that sin was crouching at his door. By faith, we must do very well in our offerings to the Lord in order for Him to approve of them. If not, then sin is crouching at our door. It takes a great faith to offer excellent gifts to God, gifts that truly excel. Do well in your offerings to Him. Give Him some of the best of your increase.

3. Please God before you die

"By faith Enoch was taken up so that he should not see death... for he obtained the witness that **before** his being taken up he was pleasing to God" (He 11:5).

The great thing about Enoch, for our learning, is not the unique and infrequently given reward he received of being taken up to God without suffering physical death (Ge 5:24), but that he walked with the Lord in such a faithful way while he was on the earth that it pleased God. By faith you must please God in your life on earth, before your time is up. Don't wait to have or show faith toward God.

"Finally, then, brethren, we request and exhort you in the Lord Jesus, that as you received from us instruction as to how you ought to walk and please God (just as you actually do walk), that you excel still more" (1 Thess 4:1). Since the Bible says that it is impossible to please God without faith (He 11:6), then God will only be pleased with or approve of people with faith. Those who fail to have faith toward God cannot please Him and therefore will be lost eternally (2 Thess 1:8, 9). So in your Bible study, you must focus primarily on completely understanding the doctrine of faith toward God.

4. Believe that God exists and rewards seekers

"Without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to God **must** believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who seek Him" (He 11:6). I once worked with man named Frank who did not believe that God exists. To prove it he used to reach up and open the door to a storage shelf at the top of his desk/cubicle and say, "He's not in there," or, "I don't see Him in there." Frank refused to believe in a God that he could not see. So according to Frank's methodology,

God did not exist. But the faithful say, "There is a God," or, "He is alive," or, "God exists." Yet, I quoted this verse to Frank, "**The fool has said in his heart, 'There is no God'**" (Ps 14:1). It is not wise, but foolish to say that God does not exist. Prove your faith by saying that God is real. Although the world calls them atheists, God calls them unbelievers and their destination is the lake of fire (Re 21:8). Unbelief greatly offends God. Therefore atheism greatly offends God. But this is not the only kind of unbelief.

5. Heed God's warnings and prepare to be saved (through the water of baptism)

"By faith Noah, being warned by God about things not yet seen, in reverence prepared an ark for the salvation of his household, by which he condemned the world, and became an heir of the righteousness which is according to faith" (He 11:7).

Are you preparing yourself and your family to be saved from the fire of hell by reverently obeying all of God's warnings on how to save your souls? There are gospel teachings that we, by faith, must obey in order to be saved from our sins (2 Thess 1:8, 9). What are those teachings? This course was designed to help you to know them well.

Peter warned us about the coming destruction of the earth by fire and he told us how to be prepared for it, saying, "But the day of the Lord will come like a thief, in which the heavens will pass away with a roar and the elements will be destroyed with intense heat, and the earth and its works will be burned up. Since all these things are to be destroyed in this way, what sort of people ought you to be in holy conduct and godliness, looking for and hastening the coming of the day of God, because of which the heavens will be destroyed by burning, and the elements will melt with intense heat! But according to His promise we are looking for a new heavens and a new earth, in which righteousness dwells" (2 Pe 3:10-13).

6. When God calls you, obey

"By faith Abraham, **when he was called, obeyed** by going out to a place which he was to receive for an inheritance; and he went out, not knowing where he was going" (He 11:8).

Parents, when you call your child, does he obey you the first time? When God called His child, Abraham, he obeyed the first time. Yet he did not understand fully where he was going. That is faith. When Jesus called to Peter and his brother Andrew, saying, "**Follow Me,**" they obeyed. But they did not know where they were going. When Jesus called to James and John, saying, "**Follow Me,**" they obeyed. Did these know where they were going with the Lord?

Jonah was called by God to go and preach to a wicked city so that they would repent and be saved. But he did not obey and ended up having to learn a personal lesson on God's saving power when God had to rescue him from the ocean and then from the belly of a big fish; a three day trip in a fish! A profound lesson. When he finally obeyed God's calling and preached to Nineveh, he still had the wrong attitude about it and was not satisfied that the city actually repented and was saved. What kind of preacher is unhappy when sinners get saved? Moses was called by God to deliver Israel from slavery to Pharaoh, king of Egypt. But Moses was hesitant to obey that calling. So God started to get angry with Moses. Then Moses obeyed and went. What about you? How quickly do you obey what God is calling you to do through the gospel of Jesus Christ? Are you like Abraham, Peter and Andrew, James and John or are you like Jonah and Moses? Be responsive and obedient to what God is calling you to do for Him. Do not rebel against it, but have the right attitude about His work through you to accomplish His purposes. Do not hesitate, but carefully obey God's gospel calling on your life to do something.

7. Believe that God is faithful to fulfill His promises to you

"By faith even Sarah herself received ability to conceive, even beyond the proper time of life, since she considered Him faithful who had promised" (He 11:11).

God made a promise to Sarah that would be hard for her to believe, unless she had faith toward God. She was an old woman, but would have a son. She believed the promise, so she received ability from God to have a child.

By faith Paul believed God's promise of safety despite a terrible situation at sea: A large violent storm that lasted weeks, with darkness during the day; not being able to control the ship's direction; ending up shipwrecked on a reef near an unfamiliar island bay; the ship being broken up by the waves pounding against it; having to jump overboard and swim to safety on an island. Through all of that Paul believed by faith the promise of an angel that he must stand before Caesar and that God would grant to him all who were sailing with him, including 276 soldiers, prisoners, and sailors. "All of us in the ship were two hundred and seventy-six persons." (Ac 27:37) [Notice that the writer of Acts, Luke, used the word "us" to indicate that he was one of the persons on that wrecked ship.] By faith Paul said to all those on board, "I believe God that it will turn out exactly as I have been told" (Ac 27:25). In the midst of your stormy life, do you believe the promises that God gave to you in the gospel of Jesus Christ, even if they seem hard to believe? Do you think, like Sarah, that God makes good on His promises? You were not specifically promised a child, but you were promised by God to be resurrected from the dead if you have faith in His Son. Do you believe that miraculous promise? It will take a miracle from God to resurrect anyone from the dead, especially if they have been dead for thousands of years. Do you trust in the awesome power of God? If there is one person that you should have the greatest confidence in, it is God. He is by far more trustworthy than anyone who ever lived or will live. And He will make good on any and every one of His promises, whether promises made in connection to rewarding the faithful or damning the faithless. In ancient times, God promised to give land to the Israelites. But only two of them had faith in that promise, Caleb and Joshua. So they were the only ones of that generation who got to go to the Promised Land. Just a few saved by faith. Oh God, give us faith in your words to the point where we do not retreat on them in the face of our own fears or lack of courage. Oh God, help our unbelief, that we might receive, by faith, your promises. God is able.

8. Admit that you are a stranger here seeking heaven

"By faith he [Abraham] lived as an alien in the land of promise, as in a foreign land, dwelling in tents with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the same promise; for he was looking for the city which has foundations, whose architect and builder is God" (He

11:9). And, "All these died in faith, without receiving the promises, but having seen them and having welcomed them from a distance, and having confessed that they were strangers and exiles on the earth. For those who say such things make it clear that they are seeking a country of their own. And indeed if they had been thinking of that country from which they went out, they would have had opportunity to return. But as it is, they desire a better country, that is a heavenly one. Therefore God is not ashamed to be called their God; for He has prepared a city for them" (He 11:13-16).

God will not be ashamed of you, if you, like Abraham, by faith consider yourself an exile here on earth who is looking for the city of heaven. Do you tell others that you are a foreigner on earth because you are seeking a better place instead, namely heaven? By faith you must seek the heavenly paradise, not an earthly paradise, or else God will be ashamed of you.

9. Sacrifice your prized possessions when tested by God (He will test your love for Him)

"By faith Abraham, when he was tested, offered up Isaac; and he who had received the promises was offering up his only begotten son; it was he to whom it was said, 'IN ISAAC YOUR DESCENDANTS SHALL BE CALLED.' He considered that God is able to raise men even from the dead; from which he also received him back as a type" (He 11:17-19).

Like Abraham, a person of outstanding faith obeys, even when it requires offering up the most precious or difficult of sacrifices in order to please God. Are you passing the testing of your faith by offering up what God wants you to offer Him? Like Abraham, even if God does not tell you all of the details as to why you need to offer something to Him, are you by faith going to do it? It may be difficult for you to understand why He wants you to do it and it may be difficult for you to actually do it. But by faith you must pass the test by offering up exactly what He wants you to offer to Him. Your obedience to God is more important to hang on to than anything you own, love, possess, or have gained. Think about this: Abraham had God's promise fulfilled to him in Isaac. Yet after receiving that promise,

God wanted Abraham to do something that seemed opposite to the promised plan in Isaac. Abraham had to consider that God could fulfill His plan in Isaac in a different way, a way that only God could accomplish. Be ready for changes in your expectations of how God's promises to you are to be fulfilled. What you expect is not always what God expects. Seek what He expects or else you will fail the testing of your faith. Consider your prized possessions. Will God test you with them? What about this prized possession, your own life? Will you offer it if you are being tested for your faith in Christ?

You who take pride in riches will not like this story. As a husband and a father, I had to make a difficult sacrifice in order to fulfill my calling to carry the cross of my family's needs. When my income was at an all time low, and work was scarce or low paying and needs were high with six children, I offered up my last prize possession, eight acres of beautiful land. It was a southern exposure with lots of sun. Half of it was woods and half of it was two well defined pastures with trees around most the perimeter as a natural boundary. A tree row between the two pastures provided some shade for the upper pasture for part of the day. There were berry bushes that we picked from and ate. At times, there were wild turkeys, deer, and the largest of woodpeckers of the Pileated type. And we had some outstanding neighbors. So I did not want to sell this land; it was a great place to own, to be at, to enjoy, and to build on. But I had to sell it to take care of my family. I believe, for some of you, that there will come a time when you have to make a similar kind of decision, by faith. Now I do not believe that any of you must offer up your one and only son, like Abraham was tested to do. But I do believe that God will test your loyalty to him somehow in regards to your very own prized possessions.

10. Worship God even when dying

"By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau, even regarding things to come. By faith Jacob, as he was dying, blessed each of the sons of Joseph, and worshiped, leaning on the top of his staff. By faith Joseph, when he was dying, made mention of the exodus of the sons of Israel, and gave orders concerning his bones" (He 11:20-22).

Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph pleased God because they had demonstrated faith toward God through the end of their lives. Even though they were old and about to die, they gave blessings, worshiped God, and spoke of the future prophetic events. If you are old or dying, are you still worshiping God, blessing people, and talking about heaven to others?

Consider Anna. "And there was a prophetess, Anna, the daughter of Phanuel, of the tribe of Asher. She was advanced in years and had lived with her husband seven years after her marriage, and then as a widow to the age of eighty-four. She never left the temple, serving night and day with fastings and prayers. At that very moment she came up [to Jesus] and began giving thanks to God, and continued to speak of Him to all those who were looking for the redemption of Jerusalem" (Lk 2:36, 37). Anna was very old. But her age did not keep her from being at the meeting place of God's people; she was there night and day. She took every available opportunity and time to serve the Lord and His people, and this was not in want of pleasure, but in fasting and prayer. What a great example of faith to follow.

11. Do not obey wicked government edicts/laws

"By faith Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents, because they saw he was a beautiful child; and they were not afraid of the king's edict" (He 11:23).

By faith, Moses' parents hid their baby boy, because the Egyptian government wanted to kill him and all the other Israelite baby boys. Now if the government passes a law to try to get you to do something wicked like killing your child, are you going to by faith, like Moses' parents, disobey because you fear God and His law over man and his ungodly law? But you must not be a fool by disobeying the government when God actually wants you to obey them, like in paying your taxes (Ro 13). God can use the government for good things in your life. Do not rebel against what God believes in. But do not act on the wicked laws of anyone.

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were not afraid of the king's wicked law. When the Babylonian government made a law that required all people in their kingdom to worship the gold idol that king Nebuchadnezzar had made, three men did not obey that wicked command to practice idolatry, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego (Dan 3). The punishment for failing to obey this wicked command was death by being thrown into the fire. But these three men had more respectful fear of God and His eternal fire than of the temporary fire of evil men. By faith they said, "If it be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the furnace of blazing fire; and He will deliver us out of your hand, O king. But even if He does not, let it be known to you, O king, that we are not going to serve your gods or worship the golden image that you have set up" (Da 3:17, 18). They let their faith in God be known to the king who wanted to kill them. Faith is something that you must let be known. When you are backed into a corner in your life by evil men, what are you letting be known about your faith in God? These men had courage. But they said that even if God did not save them from the punishment of men, the fire, then they still were not going to act wickedly against their God and worship the gods of men. What about you, will you still show great faith in God even if He will not save you from the hands of evil men? But God saved these three faithful men from being consumed by the fire. Daniel was not afraid of the king's evil law. Daniel had the same kind of faith when the government made a law that you could not petition any god or man besides the king or else you would be thrown into the lion's den (Dan 6). When Daniel knew that the law was put into effect, he went into his house, on his roof chamber, and he continued praying to God three times a day as he had done previously. So they threw him into the lion's den. But God saved Daniel from the lions and he was brought out safely. By faith you must continue to pray to God even when societies and cultures decide by law that it is not proper to do so in their land and places. Doeg obeyed a wicked command from a king. When Saul, the first human king of Israel, wanted his guards to kill the priests who unerringly gave David bread to eat, the guards refused to put forth their hands to attack the priests of the Lord (1 Sa 22:17). Then Saul told Doeg to do it, since he was the one who reported to the king that David received help from these men. He killed eighty-five priests that day (1 Sa 22:18). Doeg obeyed the wicked command of Saul. He lacked faith in God regarding the treatment of His faithful servants.

12. Choose to live godly instead of in sinful pleasures

"By faith Moses, when he had grown up, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; choosing rather to endure ill-treatment with the people of God, than to enjoy the passing

pleasures of sin; considering the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures of Egypt; for he was looking to the reward" (He 11:24-26).

Sin is pleasurable. But when Moses had grown up, he left the power, the prestige, and the riches of royalty in the kingdom of Egypt to become a fellow sufferer in the kingdom of God. He was in control of choosing which lifestyle he wanted to live, either a godly one or one of sinful pleasure. Likewise, you are in control of choosing the lifestyle in which you want to live in respect to God or self.

Joshua told God's people that they had a choice to make about worship. Joshua said, "If it is disagreeable in your sight to serve the Lord, choose for yourselves today whom you will serve: whether the gods which your fathers served which were beyond the River, or the gods of the Amorites in whose land you are living; but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord" (Josh 24:15). These Israelites were challenged to choose between worshipping the living God or idols. Today you have that same choice to make. Which religion will you practice? Will it be of the God who made the heavens and the earth? Even Jesus had a choice. Like Moses, Jesus had to learn to refuse and choose. For example, "Therefore the Lord Himself will give you a sign: Behold, a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel. He will eat curds and honey at the time He knows enough to refuse evil and choose good. For before the boy will know enough to refuse evil and choose good, the land whose two kings you dread will be forsaken" (Is 7:14-16). Like Jesus, Moses, and the Israelites, there will come a time when you are grown up enough physically and in knowledge to make a decision to follow Jesus Christ. Like all people, you will have the choice to accept evil or to refuse it, to accept good or to refuse it, to accept Christ Jesus or to refuse Him. God will not make the choice for you. When you come to the point where you understand the difference between sinful living and godly living, are you choosing to suffer as a godly person instead of continuing to enjoy your sinful pleasures? The reward of life is waiting for all those who by faith give up sinful living and worldly pleasures in order to follow the Messiah. God saves people who choose to be saved. They are the chosen of the Lord.

13. Keep the gospel to avoid God's wrath

"By faith he [Moses] kept the Passover and the sprinkling of the blood, so that he who destroyed the first-born might not touch them" (He 11:28).

By faith, Moses kept the Mosaic Age Passover feast and so he was not destroyed. In the Christian Age, we are not required to keep the Passover Feast to be justified (Col 2:16), and so you will not suffer any of God's wrath when you do not keep it. But we must keep the gospel (1 Cor 15:2) to be saved, not destroyed, and the sprinkling of blood that it represents.

For example, Hebrews 5:9 says that Jesus is the author of eternal salvation for all who obey Him. And 2 Thessalonians 1:8, 9 says that those who do not know God and do not obey the gospel, will pay the penalty of everlasting destruction. So by faith, you must keep the gospel of Jesus Christ in order to be approved by God, saved from your sins, and have eternal life.

14. Repent quickly when you learn of God's wrath for your sins

"By faith Rahab the harlot did not perish along with those who were disobedient, after she had welcomed the spies in peace"

(He 11:31). For Rahab said to the spies, "For we have heard how the LORD dried up the water of the Red Sea before you when you came out of Egypt, and what you did to the two kings of the Amorites who were beyond the Jordan, to Sihon and Og, whom you utterly destroyed. And when we heard it, our hearts melted and no courage remained in any man any longer because of you; for the LORD your God, He is God in heaven above and on earth beneath" (Josh 2:10, 11).

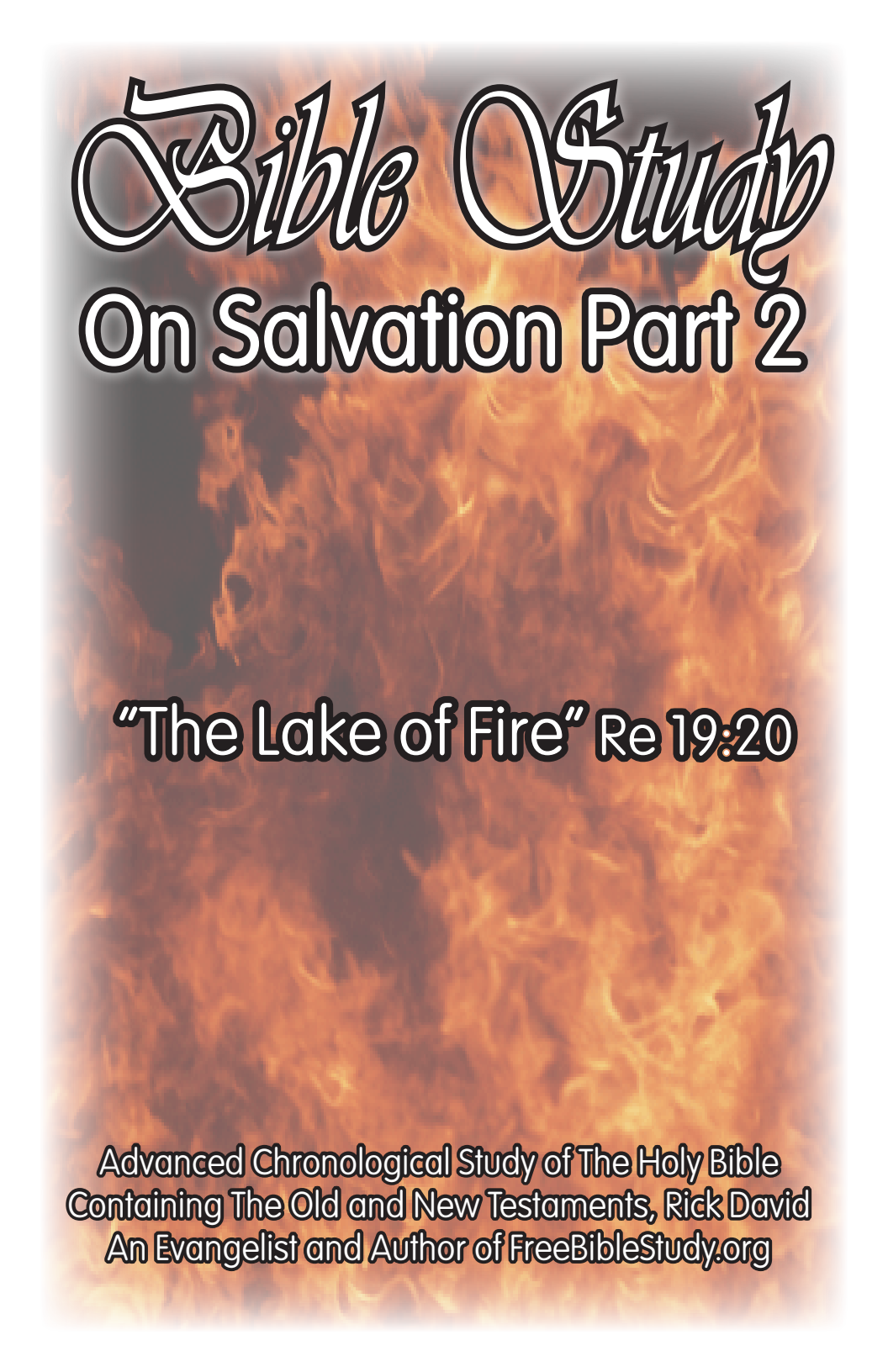
God favored Rahab, a harlot, because, when she heard of all the great things that He did for Israel, she began to have a reverent fear of God. You could see her faith when she hid God's spies who came to Jericho to look it over before Joshua was going to destroy it. Like Rahab, if you realize that you are a sinner, and that God is going to destroy you for your sin, you must quickly repent and fear God so that you will not be destroyed by His coming wrath. Are you ready to warmly welcome His people into your life? If not, you will certainly perish like everyone else did in Jericho.

When Jonah preached to the wicked city of Nineveh, telling them that they were going to be destroyed in forty days by God's wrath if they did not repent, then the whole city feared God and quickly repented, from the least to the greatest, even the king (Jonah 3). They repented when they learned that God was going to destroy them. In the next part of this course, you will study about the sins that the gospel requires us to repent of so that we will not be destroyed by God's coming wrath.

Conclusion

Faith is being sure and certain about God and His word. Faith toward God is the only thing that He will reward, approve of, and be pleased with in you. So you must focus the rest of your life on growing in your faith toward God. Your faith in God will begin and grow stronger as you hear and continue to hear the word of Christ, if you get convicted by it. There are many approved examples in the Bible of people and their faith toward God. You would do well to imitate their faith. God wants your faith to work. First, the most important faithful work you can do for God is to come to believe in His Son, Jesus Christ and what He did for you (Jn 6:29). Second, in connection with your belief in Jesus, God wants you to show or demonstrate your faith in Jesus to Him and others.

Now Complete the
TEST on Salvation 1



Bible Study On Salvation Part 2

"The Lake of Fire" Re 19:20

Advanced Chronological Study of The Holy Bible
Containing The Old and New Testaments, Rick David
An Evangelist and Author of FreeBibleStudy.org

We can be saved by repenting from dead works

"Repent... from dead works" He 6:1

The Narrow Gate of Repentance

This is where and when the gospel of God's salvation gets "difficult" (1 Pe 4:18). Jesus said, "enter through the narrow gate; for the gate is wide and the way is broad that leads to destruction, and there are many who enter through it. For the gate is small and the way is narrow that leads to life, and there are few who find it" (Mt 7:13, 14). And again, when someone asked Him if many are being saved (Lk 13:22-30), He said that "many will not be able" (Lk 13:24), and then He told them why. Even though they claimed to know Jesus, many were still practicing forms of evil doing, meaning dead works (**SEE vs. 27**). They did not repent of their dead works. And so Jesus indicated that He will ignore their pleas at the Judgment, and reject them to the hellfire! [He reiterated this point in Mt 7:21-23]

This is where and when the way to be saved gets very small or narrow. The reason for this is repentance. For by its true nature and definition, repentance is very difficult and hard. And so it is not easy to be saved, as some like to preach and teach it. Indeed, it is very difficult to be saved from one's sins. For example, Peter said, "And if it is with difficulty that the righteous is saved, what will become of the godless man and the sinner? This is the true grace of God. Stand firm in it!" (1 Pe 4:18; 5:12). [So true grace says it is difficult to be saved, but false grace says it's easy to be saved.] It is not easy even for a righteous man to be saved from his sins.

Nevertheless, we must strive to enter heaven through the narrow and small gate of the gospel of repentance. We must humble ourselves and repent. For this is altogether righteous. Jesus said, "repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations" (Lk 24:47). So if we want to be forgiven of our sins by Christ, we must, with difficulty, even with great difficulty, repent of our sins.

Obviously, Jesus is the gate (SEE Jn 10:7; 14:6), but so are His teachings in the gospel, like repentance. For what He taught represents His gate.



Why Must We All Repent?

The reason is simply this: "God is now declaring to men that all people everywhere should repent, because He has fixed a day in which He will judge the world in righteousness through a Man whom He has appointed, having furnished proof to all men by raising Him from the dead" (Ac 17:30, 31). Therefore, some day, God will judge all of the people in the world, including you and me, based on Jesus Christ and His gospel, according to the standard of His teachings and "sayings" (Jn 12:48).

"For we will all stand before the judgment seat of God" (Ro 14:10). This includes Paul, who wrote this verse, and the church in Rome, to whom he was writing, and also us. All will be judged "according to their deeds" (Re 20:12), whether they were good or bad. "For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each one may be recompensed for his deeds in the body, according to what he has done, whether good or bad" (2 Cor 5:10).

So let each of us prepare for our own appearance at God's judgment seat by learning to do the "deeds" which He deems "good," according to the standard of what Jesus said, especially in regards to His teachings on repentance. And by God's grace, in this lesson, we will more perfectly learn to overcome "deeds" which are "bad" to instead do that which is "good" in His sight. Amen.

It Is of First Importance!

After He was baptized by John in the Jordan River, "**Jesus began to preach and say, 'Repent' "** (Mt 4:17). So when He started His preaching ministry, **the very first thing He began to teach was repentance**. And when Jesus sent out His twelve apostles, they mainly taught that men should repent (Mk 6:12; Ac 2:38). Paul also preached that all Jews and Gentiles must turn to God in repentance (Ac 26:20; 20:21), not "Come to God as you are," as some like to say. We must come to God with repentance, even as we come to church to worship Him (SEE Lk 18:9-14).

In Hebrews 6:1, we read that one of the "elementary" things we must be taught about Jesus, when we first want to be saved or become a disciple of Christ, is "**repentance from dead works**". What are "dead works"? They are activities and habits which God considers to be very bad, sinful, and wicked, so much so that He will not save us unless we repent of them.

Yet if we overcome them through Jesus Christ, God has promised to save us by His grace, the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, by what He did for us on His cross, and give us eternal life because of it. God favors repentance. But if we do not overcome our "**dead works**" God promised to condemn us with His wrath and give us everlasting death in the lake of fire; hell (SEE Re 21:7-9). So God will condemn us for our "**dead works**," if we continue in them, if we do not repent of them.

Therefore, we must understand that we cannot be saved, become a disciple of Christ, or get close to God, even at the start of our relationship with Him, unless we do what Jesus and His authorities said to do, to repent. **This teaching must be foremost in our minds as we come to God through His Son, Jesus.**

Repentance Is Not Prayer!

As you should see in this lesson, repentance is not defined as prayer (for some are incorrectly defining it to mean prayer, especially in regards to one's salvation). Yet, these are two distinctly different words, with two distinctly different meanings. They are not synonymous with each other. So, for example, after hearing the gospel of Jesus Christ for the first time, when people asked, "**What must we do**" (Ac 2:37) to be saved, Peter commanded them to "**Repent, and each of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins; and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit**" (Ac 2:38). Notice that Peter did not tell them to "pray and be baptized" or "pray for salvation and afterward be baptized". For repentance does not mean to pray, as some mistakenly believe and teach. They were to repent of their unbelief, their sexual immorality, their deception, their practicing magic, their worship of idols, and so on and so forth. They must separate from these things to be saved. For example, when some magicians heard the gospel, they repented by publicly burning their magic books (Ac 19:19). This illustrates the true meaning of repentance. For they renounced their sins, even publicly. It was widely known among the churches that those who believed in Thessalonica turned away from worshiping idols (1 Thess 1:8, 9). Even when Zacchaeus, a rich chief tax collector, got near a holy Jesus, he renounced his lack of charity toward the poor and proved it by pledging to give half of what he owned to them, and even pay back four times as much to those he defrauded (Lk 19:8-10). Associating with a holy Jesus, and His holy gospel, should always create this kind of repentant response, for all have sinned (Ro 3:23), so all need to respond to Jesus and His gospel with repentance.

So do not confuse repentance with prayer. We were not commanded by Christ or His apostles to pray for salvation, but to repent and be water baptized in the name of the Lord for salvation (SEE Mt 28:19; Ac 22:16; Mk 16:15, 16). This false teaching on prayer for salvation (to receive Jesus in to one's heart) has misled many on the true meaning and purpose of repentance, the good confession, and even water baptism, and also on how to receive the Holy Spirit from God in to one's heart (Ac 5:32). For many who were mistakenly led to pray for one's salvation (and to receive the Holy Spirit) do not yet even know what these things are or even that they are commanded for salvation. These teachings are not an after salvation experience. They were commanded to be done for salvation. **For the promises of salvation, forgiveness, and eternal life relate to the will and commandment of God, not the tradition of men! Repent!**

Repentance Defined

We must understand that repentance means more than just saying "I'm sorry." For example, although it begins with sorrowful afterthoughts, it ends by doing the right thing.

1. It Begins with a Sorrowful Afterthought

Have you ever felt sorry after you did something wrong? If so, then you have experienced the beginning, but not the end of repentance. The N.T. Greek definition of repentance literally means "to perceive afterwards" [Vines Expository Dictionary of Old and N.T. Words].

God explained this well when He said, "**No man repented of his wickedness, saying, 'What have I done?'**" (Jer 8:6). Have you ever said that? Repentance starts with a sorrowful realization of a wrong word or deed. It causes a person to have regretful afterthoughts, such as, "What have I done?"

Although repentance begins in the thoughts or the heart of a person, this is not the complete definition of repentance. If possible, you must also diligently right the wrong; correct it.

2. It Ends with Producing or Bearing the Right Kind of Fruit (righting the wrong)

Sorrowful afterthoughts are there to provoke us to action, to produce something good. For example: "**For the sorrow that is according to the will of God produces a repentance without regret, leading to salvation**" (2 Co 7:10). So the regret that we have when we



realize that we have sinned must actually "**produce a repentance,**" meaning it must "produce" or bear some sort of appropriate fruit, some produce, if you will.

"Turn to God, performing deeds appropriate to repentance" (Ac 26:20), not come to God as you are! For we all sinned against God and man (Ro 3:23).

For example, John the Baptist said, "**bear fruit in keeping with repentance**" (Mt 3:8). Likewise, Paul warned all people everywhere, including Jews and Gentiles, to do something about their sins, saying that: "**they should repent and turn to God, performing deeds appropriate to repentance**" (Ac 26:20). What deeds are appropriate for your specific sin?

Repentance requires action and deeds. So just being sorry for something is not good enough. That sorrow must motivate us to make it right according to our specific sin. For our repentance to be real, valid, and complete in the sight of God, it must have appropriate good deeds associated with it. The fruit of repentance is one of the first and most plentiful fruits of the spirit we need to bear. We must ripen the fruit of repentance in our lives. If it is within your power, you must bring repentance to its rightful end for the sins in your life, especially the ones which God singled out as condemnable, as listed next.

Eleven “Dead Works” God Will Judge

He 1:6

Below is a list of sins for which God said He will condemn us to hell, unless we repent of practicing them. So let us learn how to repent from them to instead receive God's grace and forgiveness for committing them.

“Do you not know that [1] the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived; neither [2] fornicators, nor [3] idolaters, nor [4] adulterers, nor [5] effeminate, nor [6] homosexuals, nor [7] thieves, nor the [8] covetous, nor [9] drunkards, nor [10] revilers, nor [11] swindlers, will inherit the kingdom of God. Such were some of you” (1 Cor 6:9-11).

Any person who continues in the habit of any one or more of these sins will not inherit the kingdom of God. Jesus will not permit him to be saved. Instead he will inherit the hellfire. But Paul said that some of the Corinthians “were” such sinners, but not any more. They brought repentance to its proper end by getting out of the habit of these deadly sins. Sin is a habit that must be broken. You must get sin out of your life in order to have life, heaven. The eleven sins which Paul spoke of are defined below, as well as fitting solutions to bring repentance to its proper end for each one.

Note: Effeminate and homosexuals will be studied under the same topic, since they are directly related to each other in nature. Thieves, covetous, and swindlers will be grouped under the same heading since they are related. Fornicators and adulterers are sexual sinners, but because of the need to carefully explain these sins and the differences between the two, they will be listed separately.

1. The Unrighteous Will Be Judged

In the Scriptures, the phrase “the unrighteous” is applied to someone who is lost, not saved, condemned, not forgiven, excluded from the covenant life of God. And this could be for a variety of reasons, sins, or dead works.

Now unrighteousness is a general term which covers a wide range of sins. For example, “**All unrighteousness is sin**” (1 Jn 5:17). So being unrighteous means being a sinner. But in the Scriptures, it means a condemned sinner, a sinner who has not yet overcome his logs of sin through Christ. [*Sin, in the Greek, literally means missing the mark, missing the intended target behavior. The unrighteous are missing it with God in some significant way, they are sinning.*]

So, the first thing that the unrighteous ought to do is learn about God's righteousness in Jesus, and how this can make us righteous. Learn about the gospel of Jesus Christ, which includes repentance for the forgiveness of sins based on the name of Jesus Christ. This is what we are studying in this lesson. The righteous have repented of their dead works. So righteous people are not in the habit of practicing certain sins, therefore they are righteous. God said that Noah “**alone**” was “**righteous**,” and so He saved him from the destruction of the world at that time, by grace (Ge 6:8; 7:1). But all the others were unrighteous and therefore suffered the judgment and wrath of God. God favors righteousness, and those who do it.

2. Fornicators Will Be Judged

The sin of fornication happens when a man and a woman have sexual relations, but have never been married to each other. If either one of them is or was lawfully married to another person, and have not been released from it according to God's standards, not man's, then both of them would be committing the sin of adultery, not fornication. So do not confuse the sin of adultery with the sin of fornication. They are two different sins which cannot always be repented of in the same way.

Fornicators must separate or marry. Fornication is not holy. Marriage is holy. For example, if two never before married people

begin to have sexual relations with each other, without being first married to each other, whether they begin to live together or not, they are both committing the sin of fornication. They must become separate and stay separate from each other physically, until they become married to each other. But if they do not marry each other, they must remain separate from each other in order to bring repentance to its proper end. Now if any one of them was previously married or divorced, **they should not get married**, but instead very carefully study and apply the following lesson on the sin of adultery; point 4.

3. Idolaters Will Be Judged

Idolaters worship and serve created things, not the Creator (Ro 1:25). Or some worship both the Creator and created things, like the Catholics. They worship God the Father, yet they also worship Mary, who was created, and they worship and serve so called "saints", who are created beings. Yet they, and Mary, are not God, Deity. And therefore, we must not pray to them, hope in them, ask them for help, bend the knee to them, have good luck statues of them, light candles to them, or make altars for them, etc., for these are all acts of worship. They are simply creatures. So in order to be saved, idolaters must become worshipers of the Creator alone, not any created thing. For example, some in Thessalonica overcame their sin of idolatry. **"You turned to God from idols to serve a living and true God"** (1 Thess 1:9).

The Jews used to worship idols: a golden calf made by the hands of men (Ex 32); Baal and Ashtaroah (Jge 2:13); the sun (Ezek 8:16). God described what idols are in these verses: "Their idols are silver and gold, the work of man's hands. They have mouths, but they cannot speak; they have eyes, but they cannot see; they have ears, but they cannot hear; they have noses, but they cannot smell; they have hands, but they cannot feel; they have feet, but they cannot walk; they cannot make a sound with their throat. Those who make them will become like them, everyone who trusts in them" (Ps 115:4-8). The profound point here is that the dead work of practicing idolatry will make us dead, just like our idol.

4. Adulterers and Adulteresses Will Be Judged

First and foremost, what Jesus taught about the sin of adultery, the specific statements that He Himself made about it, clearly indicate that adultery primarily

Jesus Said That Adultery Happens Because of Divorce!

occurs because of a divorce. Try to understand this fully when we study His teachings against adultery [Remember, God said, **"I hate divorce"**(Mal 2:16)]. Now the sin of adultery happens when a man and a woman have sexual relations, and at least one of them is married to someone else or separated from them [an affair], or at least one of them has been unlawfully divorced, in the eyes of the Scripture/God, from their rightful spouse.

Important Note: Jesus also pointed out that adultery could occur even without physically having sexual relations with another. **"I say to you that everyone who looks at a woman with lust for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart"** (Mt 5:28). This is mental adultery. So we should not look upon others with lust and we should not dress in a sensual, "sexy", or revealing way so that others might be tempted to commit adultery with us in their hearts. This is why the use of pornography and indiscreet, revealing or sensual pictures is a sin which leads to death. It is condemned by Jesus Himself. He will judge us for it unless we repent.

All people must honor the very concept / idea of holy marriage or else be condemned by God

"Let marriage be held in honor among all, and let the marriage bed be undefiled; for fornicators and adulterers God will judge" (He 13:4).

This verse links the sin of fornication and adultery to the concept of dishonoring the very idea of marriage. So the sin of adultery occurs when a marriage is dishonored; thus adulterating it. Adulterers or adulteresses dishonor their marriage by not remaining faithful to their rightful spouse, by an affair or by divorcing their spouse and marrying

**"Let marriage
be held in honor
among all"**

Hebrews 13:4

another. Fornicators dishonor marriage by not getting married before they have sexual relations. God specifically said that He Himself will judge [i.e. condemn] anyone who continues to dishonor His sacred teaching on the meaning and purpose of holy marriage.

Next, understand **specifically when** Jesus said that the physical sin of adultery happens. Then you will be enabled to obey this command: **"You shall not commit adultery"** (Ex 20:14). Do not fail to notice that in all the cases below, adultery is the undesirable, sinful offshoot of a dishonored marriage agreement, **a divorce**. Observe that Jesus' own teachings clearly indicate that adultery mainly occurs because of a divorce.

(A) When Does A Husband Become an Adulterer?

CASE 1: Divorce with Remarriage

According to Jesus, a husband becomes an adulterer **when** he divorces his wife and marries another woman, with one exception. Jesus said, **"And I say to you [husbands] whoever divorces his wife, except for immorality, and marries another woman commits adultery"** (Mt 19:9). Paul made the Lord's command even more clear on divorce when he said: **"the husband should not divorce his wife"** (1 Cor 7:11). A husband must not divorce his wife for any other reason than her being sexually immoral, or else when he marries another woman he becomes an adulterer, one who dishonors the marriage to his rightful spouse.

CASE 2: Marrying a Divorcee

According to Jesus, a husband becomes an adulterer **when** he marries a woman who is divorced from a husband, without exception. Jesus said, **"he who marries one who is divorced from a husband commits adultery"** (Lk 16:18). A man must not marry a divorced woman or else he will become an adulterer, one who dishonors a marriage, the marriage of her first rightful husband.

(B) When Does A Wife Become an Adulteress?

CASE 1: Divorce with Remarriage

According to Jesus, a wife becomes an adulteress **when** she divorces her husband and marries another man. Jesus said, **"if she [a wife] herself divorces her husband and marries another man, she is committing adultery"** (Mk 10:12). A wife must not divorce her husband and marry another man or else she will become an adulteress, one who dishonors the marriage to her rightful spouse (**like Herodias Mk 6:17-29**).

CASE 2: Marrying While a Divorcee

According to Jesus, even when her previous husband wrongfully divorces her (whom some call "the innocent party") for a reason other than her being sexually immoral, she still becomes an adulteress **when** she marries another man. For example, **"I [Jesus] say to you that everyone [every husband] who divorces his wife, except for the reason of unchastity, [1] makes her commit adultery; and [2] whoever marries a divorced woman commits adultery"** (Mt 5:32).

So, even if she feels forced, justified, or compelled to marry another man (because her previous husband dishonored their marriage by wrongfully divorcing her, though she was not immoral, what some call "the innocent party"), Jesus Himself said she still commits adultery when she marries that second man. In that same sentence, Jesus also said that whoever marries her, a divorced woman, even her who is unjustly divorced (**when her husband sins against her**), also commits adultery.

Why did Jesus say this?

When a husband sins against his wife, and forces her out of the marriage (Mt 5:32), why is it still a sin for her to get remarried? Why did Jesus say this? Why is it adultery? Is she not justified to remarry since her husband sinned against her? When it is the husband's fault, when the husband sins against the wife, why did Jesus say anyone who marries her is still committing adultery?

The answer is this: A man is only supposed to have a woman in marriage if she has never been married or if her spouse is dead (SEE Ro 7:3; Mk 6:17, 18). The Lord forbids man to marry a divorced woman (SEE Lk 16:18; Mt 5:32). Men are not supposed to be sharing their wives with other men, even when men divorce them and force them in to another relationship, if they join one. Men are not to pass around their wives, through sexual immorality, divorce, etc.

Be of good cheer!

You who are divorced, you who are separated, or you who must separate from an adulterous union, be of good courage! Jesus said that we will not be given in marriage in heaven. **"For in the resurrection they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but are like angels in heaven"** (Mt 22:30). So, holy marriage is only a temporary, earthly, thing. There are no "soul mates" in heaven, as some like to call their spouses. For we will not be given in marriage in heaven. It is only an earthly institution. So, let us not trust in marriage to the point that we miss our true focus, heaven, which is marriageless. So do not be discouraged. Take heart! With a resolute heart, remain true to the Lord, not to a sexually immoral union. With determination in your heart, do not commit adultery.

How to Repent of Adultery

CASE 1: An Affair/Cheating

Should you marry the person with whom you have been committing adultery? Jesus said to the woman who was caught in the act of adultery: **"From now on sin no more"** (Jn 8:11). So the answer is **"No."** Did Jesus direct her to marry the man with whom she was sinning? Certainly not! Was she supposed to have that man in the first place? Certainly not! Instead Jesus told her that she was to be **"no more"** involved in the physical sin of adultery with that man. So if you have been committing adultery with another, you must **"sin no more"** by staying separate from that physical relationship. After Jesus healed a man who had been sick for 38 years, He told him to stop sinning or else something worse than a 38 year sickness would happen to him. Sins that lead to death have utterly horrible consequences, unless one separates from them.

CASE 2: An Adulterous Marriage Union

What if you married the person with whom you were committing adultery? Or what if your marriage is adulterous? Should you continue in a marriage that is adulterous? Jesus said, **"What [marriage] therefore God has joined together let no man separate"** (Mt 19:6). Does this mean that every marriage between a man and a woman should be kept together without separating it? Did John the Baptist disobey the Lord when he was trying to separate King Herod's marriage by teaching against that marriage union? Did John try to separate a marriage that was joined together by God? Absolutely not! The marriage that he tried to separate was not joined together by God, but rather by Satan. It was an adulterous marriage. Carefully listen to the story: **"For Herod himself had sent and had John arrested and bound in prison on account of Herodias, the wife of his brother Philip, because he had married her. For John had been saying to Herod, 'It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife' "** (Mk 6:17, 18). **For a man is not supposed to marry another man's wife unless her husband has died (Ro 7:3).**

Important Questions about King Herod's Marriage

Did his wife have a previous husband who was still living? Yes, she did because John said, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife" (Mk 6:18). This woman became an adulteress when she married another man, King Herod, because her first husband was still living (**READ** and understand these verses Mk 10:12; Ro 7:3, 1 Cor 7:39). Whether she was divorced from her previous husband, or simply just separated from him, when she married Herod she became an adulteress. Therefore, the second marriage of this woman was adulterous.

Though the world may not believe it, nor many religious people believe it, Mark 10:11, 12 and other Scriptures define second marriages as adultery. Remaining in that second marriage is remaining in the sin of adultery. This is why John the Baptist told the King that his marriage was not right, even though it made him and his adulterous wife angry, even to the point that she had John put to death. But John knew that their marriage was not right because it was adulterous. It was not God's will. It was not holy. So he warned them against it.

Notice The More Restrictive Commands for the Wife

"The wife should not leave her husband" (1 Co 7:10). But: "If she does leave, she **must remain unmarried**, or else be reconciled to her husband" (1 Cor 7:11). Our Lord, Jesus Christ, gave wife who has separated from her husband two options: (1) "remain unmarried" or, (2) "be reconciled to her husband". So if a wife separates from her husband, she is not permitted to put herself into a divorced status or to marry another.

So when can a wife marry another man without sinning in adultery?

The answer is here: "A wife is **bound as long as her husband lives**; but if her husband is dead, she is free to be married to whom she wishes, only in the Lord" (1 Cor 7:39). "If **while her husband is living** she is joined to another man, she shall be called an adulteress; but if her husband dies, she is free from the law, so that she is not an adulteress though she is joined to another man" (Ro 7:3).

So, according to these Scriptures, a wife is free to marry another man if her husband has died. And it must be a Christian man, meaning "only in the Lord". Yet, if her husband still lives, she is not free to marry another man. If she does marry another man while her previous husband is still living, the Scriptures then call her an adulteress.

Now carefully think about your own marriage union

Husband, is it right for you to have her as your wife? Wife, is it right for you to have him as your husband? Your desire for the eternal kingdom of God must be greater than your physical desire to stay in an adulterous marriage union for the short period of time you have here on earth. What is a few years, perhaps 1, 5, 10, 30, or 50 compared to eternity? Would you throw away or trade your eternity for those short years in an adulterous marriage? Don't let Satan deceive you like he did Eve. God has spoken. He has condemned adultery. He will not let anyone eat of the tree of life who has not overcome this sin.

Conclusion

Do you now understand more fully when adultery occurs; what makes a husband an adulterer and a wife an adulteress?

At first, it may be hard for you to accept the truth about how divorce leads to adultery. Even the disciples of Jesus had difficulty accepting this truth when He taught them about it. They said, "If the relationship of the man with his wife is like this [in regards to His teaching against divorce], it is better not to marry" (Mt 19:10).

Yet, Jesus taught that marriage is a very serious and binding agreement. Marriage must be honored by all or else God will severely judge those who adulterate it, both men and women alike (He 13:4). Jesus does not want you to commit the sin of adultery or to continue in it since, in the end, it leads to the lake of fire. Instead, He wants you to be saved.

God said, "I hate divorce" (Malachi 2:16). We too should hate it. For it sets people up to commit the sin of adultery by putting them, forcing them, to be in a condition to remarry in to adultery. This is the reason why God hates it. "Do not commit adultery" (Ex 20:14). We know how to prevent it. Let us avoid divorce.

Questions & Answers on Marriage & Adultery

Because of the many dishonored marriages that exist in our society, and in the kingdom of God (which are permitted by its legal systems, and faultily applied Christianity, and encouraged by sin and Satan), questions can arise for a variety of these situations. Here are some of the common questions which arise with answers for each one.

Q1: I didn't know...

"I did not know that it was the sin of adultery when I married this person, so I can keep my marriage, correct? Besides, we have already been married for years."

Answer: I didn't know that it was a sin against God when I was getting intoxicated. So I can continue in that habit, especially since I have been doing it for so long, correct? I didn't know that it was lying when I failed to tell the truth. So I can continue to lie since I have been doing it for so long, correct? I didn't know that it was stealing when I took what belonged to another, so I can keep what I took, correct? On Judgment Day, will Jesus say to you, "It is okay that you stayed a drunk since you have been drinking so long," or, "It is okay that you have stayed a liar, since you been lying so long" or, "It is okay that you remained a thief, especially since you have been stealing for so long" or, "It is okay that you remained an adulterer or adulteress, especially since you married into it a long time ago"? Certainly not!

Q2: I was married before I was saved...

"I was married before I was saved, so now I am free to keep that union even though it was adulterous, correct?"

Answer: When John the Baptist informed King Herod that his marriage to another man's wife was not right, he was telling this to a man who was not a Jew and not considered to be a proselyte to Moses' Law (Mk 6:18). Therefore in the greatest sense, he was an unbeliever. So according to John the Baptist, one of God's great prophets, it was not right for even these types of people, unbelievers, to have an adulterous marriage. **The valid point to consider is this:** If this so called non-religious person was **not** permitted to keep an adulterous marriage while he was an unbeliever, what makes you think that if he became a follower of the one true God, which he likely did not, that he would be even more permitted to keep this adulterous marriage union? On the contrary, he would have had to separate from it in order to be right with God. The fact is that adultery is adultery, no matter if one professes to be in a covenant with God or not, no matter if one believes in Jesus or not. Or else how will God then judge the world? To God, sin is sin, regardless of people's belief systems or lack thereof. And what if King Herod, this unbeliever, had been married to this woman for years? Would this be relevant to the point? No not at all. It is still adultery no matter how long they were married. So one should not stay in an adulterous marriage union.

Q3: My divorce happened before I was saved...

"My divorce happened before I was saved, so now I am free to marry another, now that I believe in Jesus, correct? I can now start over and have a Christian marriage, correct?"

Answer: It is written that those who do not obey the gospel will pay the penalty of eternal fire (2 Thess 1:8,9). So according to this Scripture, are *unbelievers* permitted to disobey the gospel and still go to heaven, avoiding the penalty? Certainly not! Are *believers* permitted to disobey the gospel and still go to heaven, avoiding the penalty? Certainly not! Both believers and unbelievers must obey the Gospel in order to avoid the penalty of hellfire. Therefore, now that you believe, you are *especially* required to obey the gospel in order to avoid the penalty. Specifically, in order for you to obey the gospel you must follow the direction of the Scripture for your particular situation in which you find yourself. (a) If you are a divorced woman, how do you obey the gospel? Remain unmarried or be reconciled to your rightful husband (1 Cor 7:11). (b) If you are a divorced man, how do you obey the gospel? Do **not** marry another woman if you have divorced your wife for any reason other than immorality on her part (Mt 19:9). But what if she repents, would you forgive her and receive her back? If she divorced you, should you marry another if she has not become sexually immoral in her divorcehood? There is no such thing as ditching one's rightful spouse for a so called "Christian marriage". Don't be deceived. It would be adultery.

Q4: I was forgiven when I was baptized...

"I was forgiven when I was baptized, so I am released from the sin of adultery, correct?"

Answer: Baptism is no replacement for repentance. One of the biblical requirements for a sinner to be saved and forgiven is not only to believe in Christ Jesus and to be baptized in His name, but also to repent. **"Repent and be baptized" (Acts 2:38)**. Jesus said, **"Unless you repent, you [those following Him] will all likewise perish" (Lk 13:3)**. Therefore, belief and baptism does not release adulterers and adulteresses from their responsibility to bring repentance to its proper end for their sinful relationships. Baptism is **not** a *cure-all* for outstanding sins of which you must repent. Baptism does not wash away your previous spouse or your previous marriage. It does not wash away your adultery unless you separate from it. Baptism does not forgive you from bearing the fruit of your repentance. So, if you are still in it, baptism did not change your condition as an adulterer or adulteress.

Q5: My children need a complete family...

"My children need a complete family, correct? Shouldn't I marry another person so that my child can grow up with a father and a mother, not just a single parent?"

Answer: Jesus said, **"he who loves son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me" (Mt 10:37)**. So your devotion to observing the word of the Lord, in regards to staying separate from the sin of adultery as a divorced person, must override any desires

you have for your son or daughter to grow up with a father or a mother who would be adulterous. The example you set of separating from adultery will be the best *spiritual* nurture for your child, relationship-wise. It will admonish them on how serious and binding marriage truly is in the sight of the Lord Jesus. So don't commit adultery for the so called "sake of your children".

Q6: I'm not bound in marriage when...

"I am not bound in marriage when my spouse leaves me, correct? I can get remarried, correct?"

Answer: Many people misunderstand the following Scriptures on the subject of marriage, and therefore misapply them to permit or license divorce and remarriage. Carefully read them and then carefully consider the four points that follow.

"But to the rest, I [Paul] say, **not the Lord**, that if any brother has a wife who is an unbeliever, and she consents to live with him, he must not divorce her. And a woman who has an unbelieving husband, and he consents to live with her, she must not send her husband away. For the unbelieving husband is sanctified through his wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified through her believing husband; for otherwise your children would be unclean, but now they are holy. Yet if the unbelieving one leaves, let him leave; **the brother or sister is not under bondage in such cases**, but God has called us to peace. For how do you know, O wife, whether you will save your husband? Or how do you know, O husband, whether you will save your wife?" (1 Cor 7:12-16)

(a) The Word Paul Used Does Not Mean to Unbind or Divorce

The Greek word for 'bondage' that Paul used in 1 Cor 7:15, "**not under bondage**", means to do service to. So if your husband leaves you, then do you still have to do services for him, like doing his laundry? In one case, an unbelieving wife left her believing husband and she, though living separate from him, called him from time to time to do things for her. Paul's opinion was that the brother did not have to do service to his unbelieving wife under these circumstances. Even though she, an unbeliever, left him, the believer, he did not divorce her. And after a few years, she repented and returned to him, was baptized, and they had their first child. It does not always work out this well. But how do you know whether or not you will save your unbelieving spouse who left you (1 Cor 7:16), especially if you divorce them because they left you? Why would you want to put anyone in a divorced state, even an unbeliever, knowing that adultery will surely follow if that divorced person marries another? You would be a divorcee also. Now in another place within the very same chapter as the verse above, Paul also said, "**A wife is bound as long as her husband lives**" (1 Cor 7:39). That Greek word for "bound", which is a different word than the Greek word for "bondage" used in 1 Cor 7:15, means yoked together, intertwined, fastened, etc. By translating the word in 1 Cor 7:15 as bound, some Bibles blur the difference in meaning between the two different words used in this chapter or they make it harder to discern their difference. To help you understand the difference between the Greek meaning for the words "bondage" and "bound" think of it in this way; one means to be like a servant slave [bondage], the other means to be yoked [bound]. So by using two different words, Paul was not advocating divorce and remarriage when a spouse leaves.

(b) It Was an Opinion of Man, Not a Command from the Lord

Clearly, what Paul said in 1 Cor 7:15 was simply his own opinion [speculation], and not a command from the Lord. For example, Paul prefaced his own advice about doing service to a spouse who left by saying, "**I say, not the Lord**" (1 Cor 7:12). So in this circumstance, which the Lord gave no command or direction about, Paul decided to give his own opinion. Now is Paul's opinion binding since it has no basis on a command from the Lord? If understood properly, it is good advice. But it is not binding in the sense of the Lord judging you on it if you do not follow it. But if you misunderstand it or misapply it by sinning in divorce and remarriage God will severely judge you for this.

(c) This Opinion Was Not for Two Believers

You must also notice that Paul was specifically talking about a marriage between a believer and an *unbeliever*. So he was not giving the same opinion to two Christians who are married together. Therefore, when two believers are rightfully

married, they are not to consider one of them leaving as grounds for the other to divorce or unbind that marriage and marry another. Remember, Jesus' specific and repetitive teaching on the subject of adultery was that it was the result of divorce. You should not put yourself in a divorced state.

(d) Man Desires to Permit Divorce, Not the Lord Jesus

Man seems to want to permit divorce or unbind what God has bound; even leading men of God want to do this, like Moses. Yet, God has not intended it to be this way from the beginning of creation. For example, the Lord Jesus said to the Jews under the Mosaic Age Law, that: "**because of the hardness of your heart, Moses permitted you to divorce your wives; but from the beginning it has not been this way**" (Mt 19:8). The beginning was before Moses' Law, and it was before Christ in the flesh. Jesus was wise to reference the way it was meant to be. Today, we must uphold the way it was meant to be, that is not permitting divorce.

Q7: Would it be an even worse sin to separate...

"Would it be an even worse sin to separate from or unbind our marriage, even though when we married it would have been considered adultery?"

Answer: If you stole a car, would it be an even worse sin to give it back to the man to whom it belonged? Even if that man bought another car, the one that was stolen is still his car. And even if the guy said you could keep it, it still is not right in the sight of God. It is stolen property and He is the Lawgiver and the Judge. Be afraid!

Q8: It's unfair for God to permit a husband...

"It is unfair for God to permit a husband to divorce his wife for sexual immorality and remarry another woman, and yet not permit a wife to divorce her husband for the same reason and marry another man. Why is this not considered adultery for certain divorced husbands, but is considered adultery for any divorced wife?"

Answer: Do you think it is unfair of our Creator to issue the commands and to make the rules and to point out the truth of what adultery is and **when** it occurs in respect to a husband or a wife, and any differences thereof? Women, before you get married for the first time, carefully consider and weigh these things. Marriage is binding for both the husband and the wife, but even more so for the wife. Besides, we know woman was made for man. Let us not try to divorce ourselves from this. Be faithful until death.

Further Study on Marriage Separations from the O.T.

1. David had the legal authority to cause the separation of an adulterous marriage to get his previous wife back (2 Sam 3:12-16). King Saul should not have given his daughter Michal, David's wife, to another man, Paltiel, in marriage, even though David had left Michal to flee Saul. Perhaps Paltiel and Michal were married for seven or more years before David took her back. But still Paltiel, who cried about this separation, and Michal had to separate that adulterous marriage. So even if you have been in an adulterous marriage for many years this is no excuse to stay in it. You must separate from it in order not to continue in adultery.

2. Though not a direct parallel to adultery, but certainly a direct parallel to disobeying a command of God, many marriages were separated in the Old Testament Covenant because they were sinful unions. The Jews, even leading men, admitted to clearly violating God's specific command for them not to marry a certain group of people. Since they were personally convicted about this marriage sin, and they understood that God's wrath would be upon them if they continued in it, these religious people decided to separate from their sinful marriages (Ezra chpts. 9, 10).

5. Effeminate and Homosexuals Will Be Judged

When men act like women, and when men want to physically relate to men, they are homosexuals and effeminate; they are not straight but perverted. To be saved, men must act like men and women must act like women. Now man was not made to relate to man, sexually, but woman was made to relate to man, sexually (Ge 2:20-22, Ro 1:26, 27). Likewise, a woman was not made to relate sexually to another woman (lesbianism). This is a perversion of what God had intended for the sexes. God will judge the homosexual and the lesbian, for perversions are not holy.

(a) Bold Homosexuals Brought Down Hellfire on Two Cities

Men in Sodom and Gomorrah were homosexuals because they wanted to have sexual relations with other men. They said about the male visitors that came to Lot's home, **"Where are the men who came to you tonight? Bring them out to us that we may have [homosexual] relations with them"** (Ge 19:5). God did not allow those perverted men to have their homosexual way with Lot's visitors, who were actually angels. Shortly after this incident, God severely judged those homosexual men, destroying them and their towns with burning sulfur and fire from heaven (Ge 19:24). Escape the coming wrath of God by being straight sexually, not perverted.

6. Thieves, Covetous, and Swindlers Will Be Judged

These all want something which belongs to others, and they will do whatever they can to get it, including stealing, murdering, taking by force, or persuasive trickery.

(a) A Thief Repented During His Crucifixion

One of the two thieves who were being crucified next to the Messiah confessed that he deserved his crucifixion for his sin of thievery, and he changed from speaking evil of Jesus to speaking well

of Him. So Jesus accepted the proven repentance that this thief was able to perform while hanging on a cross, and promised to him that he would go to heaven that day with the Lord (Lk 23:40-43). The other thief on the cross next to them was not promised heaven.

(b) How King Ahab Repented of His Covetousness

For an example of a repentant covetous person, consider wicked king Ahab. He and his wife, Jezebel, coveted, strongly desired, another man's vineyard. Ahab wanted to buy his neighbor's vineyard, but his neighbor would not sell it to him. Therefore, Ahab was vexed and depressed. When his wife saw her husband like this, she decided to get the vineyard for him by falsely claiming that their neighbor cursed God and the king. So she had him stoned. Then Jezebel told Ahab that their neighbor was dead and that he should go take possession of his vineyard (1 Kings 21:1-16).

When Ahab had gone to the vineyard to take possession of it, God sent condemning words to him through the prophet Elijah. Because of their sins of coveting and murder, Elijah told Ahab that he would be destroyed. He and his wife would be brought to a miserable end by having dogs lick up his blood in the same place that the dogs licked up his neighbor's blood, and that the dogs would eat his wife in the district of Jezreel. His sons also would be destroyed (1 Kings 21:17-26).

"It came about when Ahab heard these words, that he tore his clothes and put on sackcloth and fasted, and he lay in sackcloth and went about despondently. Then the word of the LORD came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying 'Do you see how Ahab has humbled himself before Me? Because he has humbled himself before Me, I will not bring the evil in his days, but I will bring the evil upon his house in his son's days' " (1 Kings 21:27-29). Because Ahab began to repent, God would not bring this punishment to pass in what was left of Ahab's lifetime. But as soon as he died, all the words God spoke came to

Intoxication Is Condemned

1 Corinthians 6:10

pass. The dogs licked up his blood, his wife was eaten by the dogs, and his sons were put to death (1 Kings 22:38; 2 Kings 9:7-10:17). Ahab was not a righteous man. He was an idolater and more.

(c) How Zacchaeus Repented of His Swindling

For an example of a repentant swindler, consider Zacchaeus. He was a rich chief tax collector (Lk 19:1, 2). He must have been a cheat and a swindler as a tax collector, because, when Jesus came into his life, he confessed and pledged to Jesus, saying, "Behold, Lord, half of my possessions I will give to the poor, and if I have defrauded anyone of anything, I will give back four times as much" (Lk 19:8). In response to hearing this, Jesus said, "Today salvation has come to this house, because he, too, is a son of Abraham. For the Son of Man has come to seek and to save that which was lost" (Lk 19:9, 10). Zacchaeus was lost, but he began to prove his repentance to Jesus. This is why Jesus said that salvation had come to this man's house. We can find salvation the same way when we repent of our sins. You can have life by repenting from dead works, such as covetousness, thievery, and swindling.

7. He Who Gets Intoxicated Will Be Judged

Intoxication is condemned. Anyone in the habit of using wine, beer, strong drink, and drugs to make themselves drunk, intoxicated, or high, will not be saved

(For a **drunkard** and a **drugard** is the same thing). They must overcome the habit of getting intoxicated. The prophet Isaiah fittingly said, "Woe to those who are heroes in drinking wine, and valiant men in mixing strong drink" (Is 5:22). Wise King Solomon wrote, "Wine is a mocker, strong drink a brawler, and whoever is intoxicated by it is not wise" (Pr 20:1). Are you wise? You are wise if you do not get intoxicated. On the other hand, you are foolish if you do get intoxicated.

(a) A Drunkard Was Severely Judged

Jesus told the story of an evil servant who sinned greatly. After his master left, he began to drink with the drunkards. The servant reasoned, "My master is not coming for a long time" (Mt 24:48). And he began to: "beat his fellow slaves and eat and drink with drunkards" (Mt 24:49). People who get drunk cannot treat people right. Drinking destroys self-control. Because of these sins, Jesus said this, in judgment of the drunkard: "The master of that slave will come on a day when he does not expect him and at an hour which he does not know, and will cut him in pieces and assign him a place with the hypocrites; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth" (Mt 24:50, 51). When Jesus comes back, He will do the same thing with those who are in the habit of getting intoxicated, especially if they are mistreating others because of it.

8. Revilers Will Be Judged

A reviler is a person who speaks **evil** of someone, ignorantly, typically with abusive lack of respect for authority, insubordination (SEE Jude 1:8-10). A reviler casts evil slurs, insults, or rails against somebody. He slanders or falsely accuses them. He maliciously gossips, mocks, maligns, or bad-mouths another.

(a) How the Thief on the Cross Overcame His Evil Speaking

For an example of someone who overcame the sin of reviling, consider one of the thieves who was crucified next to Jesus. At one time that thief, along with the other

thief, and the people on the ground, were reviling the righteous Jesus as he hung on the cross (Mt 27:44). He was ignorantly and abusively casting slurs against Jesus. Then he repented and proved it to the Lord by telling the other thief to be quiet and quit reviling Jesus (Lk 23:40-43). He began to fear God. He also confessed that Jesus did nothing wrong, but admitted that both he and the other man deserved to die because of their sins. Then he asked Jesus to remember him when He came into His kingdom. Jesus promised this thief that he would be with Him in paradise that very day. But Jesus did not promise paradise to the other thief. Evidently, he did not repent. Do you understand how important repentance is to your own salvation?

Eight More “Dead Works” God Will Judge

Below is a list of eight more sins we must overcome in order to be saved.

“He who overcomes shall inherit these things [heaven], and I will be his God and he will be My son. But for the [1] cowardly and [2] unbelieving and [3] abominable and [4] murderers and [5] immoral persons and [6] sorcerers and [7] idolaters and all [8] liars, their part will be in the lake that burns with fire and brimstone, which is the second death” (Rev 21:7, 8).

Do not let these sins overcome you! To help everyone of us repent of them, they will be defined next, along with a fitting solution to bring repentance to its proper end for each one. Since the sin of idolatry was defined in the previous list, it will not be studied now.

1. All Cowards Will Be Judged

God will condemn religious cowards. You must be courageous for Christ in order to be saved. **“For whoever is ashamed of Me and My words, the Son of Man will be ashamed of him when He comes in His glory” (Lk 9:26).** For example, in speaking of the Judgment Day, Jesus

told the story of a servant who was afraid to do his master's will and instead acted cowardly (Mt 25:25, 26, 30). His master judged him as wicked and lazy, and then he had him thrown out into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth; the lake of fire!

(a) How Peter Overcame the Sin of Cowardliness

When the chief Jews had taken Jesus to kill Him, three different times Peter acted like a coward because he said that he did not even know Jesus, which was also a lie. When Peter heard the rooster crow, he wept bitterly because he remembered that Jesus said this would happen. Peter started to show the beginnings of repentance because he had a sorrowful afterthought, and proved it by his weeping. Later his repentance was brought to its rightful end when he boldly proclaimed the name of Jesus in front of all those who were gathered in Jerusalem for the day of Pentecost. Many more than 3,000 people, including some of those responsible for the death of Jesus, heard Peter boldly preaching in the name of Jesus (Ac 2). Paul said to Timothy: **“God has not given us a spirit of timidity, but of power and love and discipline” (2 Tim 1:7).** So every Christian must live out his faith in a bold, loving, and spiritually self-disciplined way. If you believe in Jesus, you must not be a coward, or fear what men can do to you over what God can do to you.

Note: Again, Peter proved his complete repentance of the sin of cowardliness when the high priest and his associates, the Sadducees, put him and the other apostles in jail because the followers of Jesus were increasing and Peter was healing their sick (Ac 5:14-18). However an angel released them from prison and told them to: “Stand and speak... in the temple the whole message of this Life” (Ac 5:20). But the high priest and elders brought them in and warned them not to teach in the name of Jesus anymore. They also accused the apostles of filling Jerusalem with their teaching and blaming the chief priests for the death of Jesus. Then Peter courageously said with the others, “We must obey God rather than men. The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom you had put to death by hanging Him on a cross. He is the one whom God exalted to His right hand as a Prince and a Savior, to grant repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins” (Ac 5:29-31). In those verses, we can see that Peter did not shrink back to cowardliness, but instead sprang forward in quick boldness, telling the chief Jews that they were going to obey God's command to speak rather than men's command to keep quiet. Peter boldly told them that they certainly did kill Jesus, the very charge and accusation that these Jews were upset with them for telling others. Peter definitely overcame the sin of being a coward. He risked his life for the name of Jesus.

2. All Unbelievers Will Be Judged

Basically, unbelief is not being persuaded that Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of God, and all the essential details surrounding Him, such as His life on earth, His work on the cross, and His bodily resurrection from the dead. In order to be saved, one who has not yet believed must realize who Jesus truly is and confess this to others (Ro 10:9, 10). Jesus said, **"Unless you believe that I am He, you will die in your sins" (Jn 8:24)**. If one dies in his sin of unbelief, he will be condemned. For having an **"unbelieving heart"** about the Son of God is **"evil"** (He 3:12). This is why Jesus asked people if they believed in the Son of Man, which is another phrase referring to the Messiah, Jesus Christ, God's Son (Jn 9:35; Mt 16:15).

(a) How Thomas Overcame This Sin

In this case, unbelief meant that Thomas, an apostle, was not yet convinced about the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead. He did not believe the report that Jesus had risen from the dead. Lacking faith, he said, **"Unless I shall see in His hands the imprint of the nails, and put my finger into the place of the nails, and put my hand into His side, I will not believe" (Jn 20:25)**. Jesus confronted him about his unbelief, saying, **"Reach here with your finger, and see My hands; and reach here your hand, and put it into My side; and do not be unbelieving, but believing."** (Jn 20:27). Then Thomas quickly repented of his unbelief because: **"Thomas answered and said to Him, 'My Lord and my God' "** (Jn 20:28). Is Jesus your Lord and your God? He was Thomas', an apostle's Lord and God. The Son of God is God, but He is not God the Father. God has always had a Son.

Note: God equated the Jews' disobedience to unbelief. So, unbelief also means to be disobedient. When the Jews were delivered from slavery to Egypt, when they were saved, they continued in unbelief by disobeying the commands which God gave to them. God called this type of disobedience "unbelief." Listen to what the Bible says about this: "For who provoked Him when they had heard? Indeed, did not all those who came out of Egypt led by Moses? And with whom was He angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose bodies fell in the wilderness? And to whom did He swear that they should not enter His rest, but to those who were **disobedient**? And so we see that they were not able to enter because of **unbelief**" (He 3:16-19). Do you see that the Jews, God's people, who were saved, were subsequently called unbelievers because they disobeyed God's words? So they could not enter the Promised Land [Salvation + Disobedience = Rejection]. Once God delivers you from the bondage of your sin through Jesus Christ, you must continue in obedience to Him to be considered someone who believes. Otherwise, He will consider you, a rebel toward Christ, an unbeliever. Faithful obedience to Christ is the only way that we can get to the promised heaven.

3. All Abominable People Will Be Judged

An abomination is a defiling and an unholy offense in the sight of God. Abominable people must become pure and holy in order to be saved. God calls many things an abomination. For example, the Egyptians and the Canaanites committed the abominations of sexual immorality and idolatry (Lev 18:1-30) of the kind listed below (and we know that, today, sexual immorality and idolatry are still an abomination to God):

A man having sexual relations with a blood relative—a mother, sister, niece, aunt, daughter-in-law, sister-in-law. A man having sexual relations with a woman and her daughter, or her son's or daughter's daughter. A man marrying a woman and her sister. A man having sexual relations with a woman who is having menstrual impurity. Having relations with your neighbor's wife. Offering children to the idol Molech. A male lying with a male as one lies with a female. A man having relations with an animal. A woman mating with an animal. Abominations are more than sexual immorality and idolatry. For example, proud people are an abomination to God (Pr 16:5). Kings who commit wickedness are an abomination to God (Pr 16:12). Those who justify the wicked and those who condemn the righteous are an abomination to God (Pr 17:15). False scales, differing weights and measures are an abomination (Pr 20:10, 23). There is the abomination of a woman wearing a man's clothing, or a man wearing a woman's clothing (De 22:5).

4. All Murderers Will Be Judged

The most basic and fundamental definition of murder is to take the life of an **innocent** person, to shed the blood, of an **innocent** man, woman, or child, even the unborn child. For example, God said, **"The Lord hates... hands that shed innocent blood" (Pr 6:16, 17)**. Therefore, God hates the hands of anyone, even Doctors, who murder the innocent, even the innocent unborn child who has blood and bleeds from certain methods of abortion. It is an

abomination. Yet stopping innocent life in any other way is still murder. In order to be saved, murderers must not kill another person. [Now obviously, some people are not innocent, but **guilty** and deserve to die. Consider the two thieves on the cross next to Jesus. One said they both deserved to die for their sins, but not Jesus. He did nothing worthy of death. He was innocent. Now I am not saying that a thief should be put to death.]

(a) How Paul Overcame Murder

Before he became a disciple, and before he became an apostle of Christ, he was involved in murdering Christians. "**Saul [Paul] was in hearty agreement with putting him [Stephen] to death**" (Ac 8:1). And, "**Saul began ravaging the church, entering house after house, and dragging off men and women, he would put them in prison**" (Ac 8:3). And, "**Now Saul, still breathing threats and murder against the disciples of the Lord...**" (Ac 9:1). Yet later, after he overcame his unbelief and his violent sins (1 Tim 1:12, 13), he proved his repentance by preaching boldly in the name of Jesus. After he became a disciple: "**Immediately he began to proclaim Jesus in the synagogues, saying, 'He is the Son of God'**" (Ac 9:20). And another disciple said of Paul, "**At Damascus he had spoken out boldly in the name of Jesus**" (Ac 9:27).

5. All Immoral People Will Be Judged

Immorality is a general term that covers a wide range of illegal sexual relations which violate God's law for the Biblical institution of marriage (He 13:4). Immoral people must become sexually moral in order to avoid the coming wrath of God.

(a) A Christian Named Jezebel Did Not Overcome Her Sin of Sexual Immorality

Jezebel was a member of the church at Thyatira. God wrote to that church about her, saying, "**I have this against you, that you tolerate the woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess, and she teaches and leads My bond-servants astray, so that they commit acts of immorality and eat things sacrificed to idols. I gave her time to repent; and**

she does not want to repent of her immorality. Behold, I will cast her upon a bed of sickness, and those who commit adultery with her into great tribulation, unless they repent of her deeds. And I will kill her children with pestilence; and all the churches will know that I am He who searches the minds and hearts; and I will give to each one of you according to your deeds" (Re 2:20-23).

God gave Jezebel time to repent, but she did not. Therefore, He was going to bring severe punishment on her and those who were doing the same things as she was. God will punish disciples who fail to repent of the sin of sexual immorality (Col 3:25). Are you willing to repent of it? Jezebel was not willing. Be careful with whom you keep company in church, or else Jesus might severely punish you along with the ring-leader, like He did Jezebel and her immoral companions.

6. All Magicians [i.e. Sorcerers] Will Be Judged

Sorcerers are magicians (Ac 19:18, 19), people who practice what is called "the magic arts". Sorcerers are spiritists or mediums who conjure up the dead or talk to the dead (1 Sam 28:7-25). Sorcery is interpreting dreams and omens (Da 2:2). Sorcery is witchcraft. Sorcery is magic. People use sorcery to predict the future, to get help, to gain riches, or to entertain and astonish themselves or others. Sorcerers use magic books, crystal balls, tarot cards, Ouija boards, etc.

(a) How Magicians at Ephesus Overcame Practicing Magic

"**Many also of those who had believed kept coming, confessing and disclosing their practices. And many of those who practiced magic brought their books together and began burning them in the sight of all; and they counted up the price of them and found it fifty thousand pieces of silver**" (Ac 19:18, 19). These magicians proved their correct understanding of the gospel message by repentance; they got the sinful things out of their lives. Did they sell

the objects of their sin to get the money for them? Even though they were worth much money, they destroyed those wicked things so that no one else could sin by using them. They brought repentance to its rightful end, even in front of others. Is this how you are getting the sinful things out of your life? Are you destroying them so that no one else can use them to sin? You cannot be a Christian and be a magician. Magicians [sorcerers] will not be saved. **God will make no distinction between good or bad magicians.** They are all bad to Him. If you are not convinced yet of this truth, consider Simon. Before he got saved, he "formerly", and seemingly harmlessly, "astonished them [the Samaritans] with his magic arts".

(b) How Simon Overcame Impressing People with Magic

In the story below, Simon seems like what some might call "a good magician". Yet even so called "good magicians" must repent. God makes no distinction; all magicians, good or bad, will inherit the hellfire, unless they repent. "Now there was a man named Simon, who formerly was practicing magic in the city and astonishing the people of Samaria, claiming to be someone great; and they all, from smallest to greatest, were giving attention to him, saying, 'This man is what is called the Great Power of God.' And they were giving him attention because he had for a long time astonished them with his magic arts. But when they believed Philip preaching the good news about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ, they were being baptized, men and women alike. Even Simon [the former magician] himself believed; and after being baptized, he continued on with Philip" (Ac 8:9-13). Because Philip preached the gospel of repentance, Simon quit trying to astonish or entertain people with magic, even if it did seem harmless. He "formerly was practicing magic... astonishing the people", but not anymore. He got saved from that sin. Stop impressing people with magic. Don't invite the magician over for your birthday party. Don't watch the magicians on television. Let us be serious about this and serving the Lord.

7. All Liars Will Be Judged

Liars must stop deceiving people and instead speak the truth. "Therefore, laying aside falsehood, speak truth, each one of you" (Eph 4:25).

(a) A Christian Husband and Wife Did Not Overcome Lying

"But a man named Ananias, with his wife Sapphira, sold a piece of property, and kept back some of the price for himself, with his wife's full knowledge, and bringing a portion of it, he laid it at the apostles' feet. But Peter said, 'Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit, and to keep back some of the price of the land? While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own? And after it was sold, was it not under your control? Why is it that you have conceived this deed in your heart? You have not lied to men, but to God.' And as he heard these words, Ananias fell down and breathed his last; and great fear came upon all who heard of it. The young men got up and covered him up, and after carrying him out, they buried him" (Ac 5:1-6). Later, his wife came in and Peter asked her about the price of the land. She lied, and therefore died that very same moment as well. Both Ananias and Sapphira had the opportunity to tell the truth, but they did not. So obviously, God was very unhappy with them and put them to physical death. God made a clear point that He will not tolerate deception. Do you believe that you can lie and not be severely punished for it by Jesus?

Strive to enter through the narrow gate

Jesus said that not many will be saved, since they did not strive to enter through the small and narrow gate of repentance (Mt 7:13, 14; Lk 13:22-30). It is not easy even for a righteous man to be saved from his sins, but difficult or with difficulty (1 Pe 4:18; 5:12). This is the true grace of God. It is not a lie. So you must strive to enter heaven through the narrow and small gate of the gospel of repentance. Jesus said, "repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations" (Lk 24:47). So if you want to be forgiven of your sins by Christ, you must, with difficulty, even with great difficulty, repent of your sins for Christ.

We can be saved by confessing Jesus is Lord & Christ



"If you **confess** with **your mouth** Jesus as Lord... you will be saved" Ro 10:9

Testify the "Good Confession" before Men!

When you admit to others that you believe Jesus is the Lord, that He is the Messiah, you are making "**the good confession**" (1 Tim 6:12), and this is one thing which relates to your salvation. For you must confess Him to be saved. "**If you confess with your mouth Jesus as Lord, and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved**" (Ro 10:9). Do you believe that Jesus is Lord and Christ? Do you believe that He died for your sins? Do you believe that God raised Him from the dead on the third day? If you believe these things (for this is the good belief), to be saved, your own mouth must confess them to others.

1. Jesus "testified the good confession before Pontius Pilate" (1 Tim 6:13)

For example, "**Christ Jesus... testified the good confession before Pontius Pilate**" (1 Tim 6:13). Pilate simply asked Jesus, "**Are You the King of the Jews?**" (Mt 27:11), meaning the Messiah, the Anointed One. Jesus simply agreed saying, "**It is as you say**" (Mt 27:11). As governor, Pilate had the power to free or to kill Jesus. Yet, Jesus still made the good confession of whom He was. He was not afraid of man or His enemies. Do you agree that Jesus is the King of the Jews? Will you testify to that?

Jesus also testified the good confession before the murderous chief priests and elders of Israel. For example, the high

priest asked Jesus, " 'Tell us whether You are the Christ, the Son of God.' Jesus said to him, 'You have said it' " (Mt 26:63, 64). Because He simply agreed to this, they condemned Him to be put to death. For the charge put above His head on His cross read, "King of the Jews," the Messiah. Do you believe that Jesus is the Messiah? Is your answer to this question, "Yes"?

2. Peter testified the good confession before men

Peter made the good confession in front of many disciples. For example, Jesus asked His disciples, " '**Who do you say that I am?**' And Simon Peter answered, '**You are the Christ, the Son of the living God**' " (Mt 16:15, 16). Like Peter, do you believe that Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of the Living God? Will you also testify to that before the disciples?

3. Timothy testified the good confession before men

Paul said of Timothy: "**You made the good confession in the presence of many witnesses**" (1 Tim 6:12). Like Jesus and Peter, Timothy had the courage to confess Jesus as Lord before not a few, but "**many witnesses**". Have you made the good confession in front of many witnesses?

More Examples: Martha spoke to Jesus saying, "I have believed that You are the Christ, the Son of God, even He who comes into the world" (Jn 11:27). Like Martha, do you believe that God's Son Jesus came into the world? Throughout his preaching of the Gospel, Paul constantly confessed Jesus as Christ to both Jews and Gentiles. Before Philip, an evangelist, permitted the Ethiopian Eunuch to be baptized, he somehow encouraged him to make the good confession (Ac 8:37). Indeed, the wise men made it when they said they came to worship the king, the Messiah. John the Baptist made it.

Don't Be a Coward!

Jesus said, "Do not fear those who kill the body, but are unable to kill the soul; but rather fear Him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell... Therefore, everyone who **confesses Me before men**, I will also confess him before My Father who is in heaven. But whoever denies Me before men, I will also deny him before My Father who is in heaven" (Mt 10:28, 32, 33). So your own confession of Jesus as Lord must happen before men, and it is a condition of your own salvation. If you fail to do it, then Jesus will not confess your name before the Father on the Judgment Day. The Bible makes it clear: "The **cowardly... their part will be in the lake that burns with fire and brimstone, which is the second death**" (Re 21:8). You must not be afraid of men. Fear God! It takes courage to be a Christian, to testify the good confession to others.

Note: It is also essential for one to confess His words to others. "For whoever is ashamed of Me and My words, the Son of Man will be ashamed of him when He comes in His glory" (Lk 9:26). You must confess the Lord Jesus Christ and His word to others. You must not be ashamed of His words and sayings. Paul said, "For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek" (Ro 1:16). We need to follow Paul's courageous example of being unashamed of the testimony in the gospel, since it is all about the wonderful subject of God's salvation in Jesus Christ. May God give us courage to confess the name of Jesus and His words to others. Be unashamed, but beware! Not all men to whom you confess have faith, like Pilate, like the chief Jews in Jesus' day, and so on and so forth.

Why some will not confess, at least not unto salvation

1. A men-pleaser will not openly confess that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God. And so they are seeking the wrong approval, a temporal one, not an eternal one. For example, "Many even of the rulers believed in Him but because of the Pharisees **they were not confessing Him**, lest they should be put out of the synagogue; for they **loved the approval of men** rather than the approval of God" (Jn 12:42, 43).

2. The demons confess who Jesus is, but not unto salvation, for they are not accompanied by obedience and fellowship of the Christ. For example, here is one of their useless confessions. Some demons cried out: "What do we have to do with each other, **Son of God?** Have you come here to torment us before the time?" (Mt 8:29) These demons could confess that Jesus was God's Son, but they also confessed that they would be tormented later. Therefore, even though they knew and confessed that Jesus is God's Son, they also knew and confessed that they would not receive life, but spiritual death in the unquenchable torment of the lake of fire. This same kind of unapproved confession happened with another demon in Mark 1:23, 24 and Luke 4:41.

3. The anti-Christ spirit is against confessing Christ. "Every spirit that does not confess Jesus is **not from God**: this is the spirit of the **antichrist**, of which you have heard that it is coming, and now it is already in the world" (1 Jn 4:3). Anyone who is against Christ will not confess Him as Christ to others.

Look to the Future!

On Judgment Day, everyone will testify the good confession, including those who are going to heaven and those who are going to hell. Consider the prophecies about this. "For I am God, and there is no other. I have sworn by Myself, the word has gone forth from My mouth **in righteousness** and will not turn back, that to Me **every knee will bow, every tongue will swear allegiance**" (Is 45:22, 23). This very same altogether righteous proclamation was quoted and taught by Paul in the New Covenant as well, and it is related to the Christ. Paul said, "**Every tongue will confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father**" (Phil 2:11).

So just like some demons felt compelled to blurt out that Jesus is the Son of God (Mt 8:29), when they saw Him, everyone will give the same praise to God. It is unstoppable because God has sworn with an oath in righteousness that it will happen. But not all will be saved because of it. Only those who believe and obey the gospel of Jesus Christ will be saved (2 Thess 1:8, 9). Has God given you courage or faith to confess His Son Jesus as Lord? Do you believe and agree that Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of God? Do you believe that He died for your sins, and that He was raised from the dead on the third day? Have you agreed to this or admitted it before a group of confessing Christians? The Ethiopian Treasurer "testified the good confession" before he was permitted to be water baptized (SEE Ac 8:37). He declared with all his heart that he believed that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God. If you believe with all your heart, are you willing and able to testify the good confession before you are water baptized? Why baptize someone in the name of Jesus Christ who does not yet believe in his heart that Jesus is the Christ? So the good belief must precede the good confession. Amen.

Note: Before I call on the name of the Lord for someone to be saved in water baptism (Mt 28:19; Ac 22:16), for the saving is in the name, while near the water, I read Romans 10:9, 10 to him, and ask, "Do you believe that Jesus is Lord and Christ? Do you believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead on the third day, and that He died for your sins?" If he agrees to this, by saying, "Yes", and if he has started to repent of his sins, I go down with this person in to the water, and say, "I baptize you in the name of the Father, the Son (Jesus Christ), and the Holy Spirit for the forgiveness of your sins". And then I bury him in the water and raise him up quickly, sometimes with the help of an assistant.

We can be saved by calling on the name of the Lord in water baptism

"Be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on His name" Acts 22:16

1. into the water



2. under the water



3. out of the water



Have you been **buried** (Ro 6:4; Col 2:11, 12) with Jesus in water baptism, in the right way and for the right reasons?

Four Great Blessings

There are four great blessings or promises associated with calling on the name of the Lord in water baptism. This is why, as soon as you start to repent and believe in the death of Christ for your sins, His burial, and His resurrection from the dead on the third day, you should arrange to be water baptized in His name as soon as possible. Then you can begin to receive and enjoy these encouraging blessings and promises from God associated with it.

1. Receive eternal salvation vs. eternal condemnation

Jesus said, "He who has believed and has been baptized shall be **saved**" (Mk 16:16). Peter said, "Baptism now saves you--not the removal of dirt from the flesh, but an appeal to God for a good conscience--**through the resurrection** of Jesus Christ" (1 Pe 3:21). So in water baptism you are appealing to God to save you through Christ and His "**resurrection**," meaning by His DBR, which is the gospel (1 Cor 15:1, 3, 4). From what does it save you? It saves

you from the penalty for your sins, the condemnation of your very own soul in hell (2 Thess 1:8, 9). Instead, by God's amazing grace, He will reward your soul with the joys of heaven for believing in the gospel of His dear Son. For God condemned His Son for your sins on the cross instead of you! This took a lot of love. For He bore our sins on the cross for us. He put up with all of our sins. It takes a lot of love to do this, a love which can endure a lot of offenses, all one's offenses. This is how it is with God's love.

2. Receive the forgiveness of your sins

Paul said that his sins were washed away when he called on the name of the Lord in his water baptism. For example, Jesus sent a man to Paul to tell him this: "Now why do you delay? Arise, and **be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on His name**" (Ac 22:16). From this story, do you comprehend how one is to call on the name of the Lord to be saved? Peter said, "Repent, and each of you **be baptized in the name** of Jesus Christ **for the forgiveness** [the remission] **of your sins**; and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" (Ac 2:38). So, when you repent of your sins and are water baptized in the name of the Lord, you will receive the great blessing of God forgiving all of your sins (and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit, as explained in the next blessing point). He will not hold your sins against you, unless, of course, you continue in them (for He forgave the woman caught in adultery, but also told her to not continue in that relationship / Jn 8:11).

Yet, through repentance and water baptism in the name of the Lord, God will wash away your sins with the blood of Jesus Christ. And so He will forgive all your sins which you have committed against Him and all others, even the ones you may have committed against yourself.

For some sins we commit against our own body, such as sexual sins (SEE 1 Cor 6:18). And this is not all. He will come to you and live inside of you in the form of the Holy Spirit.

3. Receive the gift of the Holy Spirit

When you repent and are water baptized in the name of the Lord, you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. For example, Peter said, **"Repent, and let each of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit"** (Ac 2:38). What is the "gift of the Holy Spirit"? Well, we should be asking this instead, **"Who** is the gift of the Holy Spirit?". He is a Person, the Holy Spirit, and He will come and live in your heart to help you to be, obviously and primarily, holy.

Note: Notice that Peter said you will receive the "gift" of the Holy Spirit, not the "gifts" of the Holy Spirit. There is a big difference between the gift of the Holy Spirit and the gifts of the Holy Spirit. Do you know the difference between the two? Learn more about this in the Q&A section and in *The Bible Study on the Greater Gifts*, *"Earnestly Desire the Greater Gifts"* (1 Cor 12:31).

4. Receive a new life, a new birth

As Peter said above, when you repent and are water baptized in the name of the Lord, **"you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit"**. Obviously, then when you receive a new Spirit, the Holy Spirit, you will have a new life, since you have a new spirit inside of you, and His attitude to help you overcome your sin and live the Christian life, which is supposed to be a holy life (SEE 2 Tim 1:9). If you yield to His prompting and guidance, the Holy Spirit will help you to live a holy life. So, after you have been buried with Christ in water baptism, you are then supposed to live a new life. For example, **"Therefore we have been buried with Him through baptism into death, in order**

that as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, so we too might walk in newness of life" (Ro 6:4).

Note: Do you know what this "newness of life" is all about? Find out more about it in *The Bible Study on New Life*, *"Walk in Newness of Life"* (Ro 4:6). What our duties are after personal salvation.

Are you ready to call on His name to be saved in water baptism?

Are you old enough to be called a man or a woman (SEE Ac 8:12)? Have you heard the gospel of Jesus Christ (Ro 10:17)? Do you believe it (Jn 20:31)? Who is Jesus? Is He the Christ, the Son of the living God (Mt 16:16)? Do you believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead (Ro 10:9, 10)? Are you willing and able to testify or agree to this before men (1 Tim 6:12)? Did He die for your sins? And because so, are you starting to repent from them?

If so, is there anything preventing you from calling on the name of the Lord to be saved in water baptism (SEE Ac 8:36)? For example, are you still doubting who Jesus is or what He did for you? Are you still sexually immoral? Are you still an adulteress? Are you still an adulterer? Are you still a liar? Do you still get intoxicated? Are you still... ?

Yet, because of the gospel, when you truly begin to regret your sins and start to repent from them, you ought to then call on the name of the Lord to be saved in water baptism.

For this is the way or manner in which calling on the name of the Lord to be saved was commanded to be done; in water baptism by a baptizer (SEE Mt 28:19; Ac 22:16), not in prayer. **"For whoever will call on the name of the Lord will be saved"** (Ro 10:13). And as mentioned in point two, we know that Paul was led by the Lord Himself to call on His name in water baptism to wash away his sins (Ac 22:16), not in prayer.

If there is nothing preventing you from being water baptized in the name of the Lord to be saved, why not make arrangements to do so as soon as you are available?

Q&A on Water Baptism

Q1: Is water baptism sprinkling, pouring, or immersion?

A: It is immersion, for the meaning of the word in the Greek (baptizo) is immersion, not sprinkling (raino), not pouring (cheo), and when referring to it specifically, it calls water baptism a "burial" (Ro 6:4; Col 2:12).

Q2: Do we have to be water baptized to be saved?

A: Yes. Jesus said we do (SEE Mk 16:16), and so did His apostles (Ac 2:38; 1 Pe 3:21; 5:12).

Q3: Was the thief on the cross saved without being baptized?

A: Yes, because he, and all others at that time, were not commanded to be water baptized in to Christ's death, for two reasons: One, Christ did not yet die, and two, the specific commands to repent and be water baptized in His name were not yet given by a risen Jesus to His apostles. So they were not yet commanded to go and preach the gospel (which essentially is the DBR of Christ (1 Cor 15:1, 3, 4), and how to obey it to be saved by God's grace, in repentance and water baptism.

Q4: I thought that we are saved by God's grace, not works?

A: Yes, we are saved by God's grace, because we cannot earn or merit our own salvation (Eph 2:8, 9), yet we cannot be saved without obeying the gospel of Jesus Christ (He 5:9; 2 Thess 1:8, 9). And so when we are water baptized in the name of the Lord we are not earning our salvation, we are obeying it for our salvation and calling on His name to save us. Besides, it says Christ is working in our water baptism, not us (Col 2:11, 12), in cutting away our sinful nature, for we are like a dead man being put in a grave. We are doing no work at all. We must let Christ do His work in our water baptism. Even more, Peter said "the true grace of God" includes a water "baptism" that "saves" us (1 Pe 3:21; 5:12), similar to how God saved Noah by grace through the water in an ark.

Q5: Should I say the sinners prayer to be saved?

A: No. There was no such commandment to pray for salvation after one starts to believe in the gospel. Likewise, the apostles did not lead a person in prayer when he wanted to be saved, but in repentance and water baptism (Ac 2:38). So you should not base your salvation on a prayer.

Q6: But when it says "whoever will call on the name of the Lord will be saved" (Ro 10:13), isn't this to be done in prayer?

A: No. It means in water baptism. For example, Jesus commanded baptizers to call on the name of the Lord for a person during his water baptism (Mt 28:19), not lead them in prayer for salvation (or as some like to say, receive or accept Jesus in to your heart). Likewise, when people wanted to be saved by the gospel, they were led in repentance and water baptism **"in the name of the Lord"** by the apostles (Acts says this phrase over and over again, "in the name of" without reference to prayer, but in connection to water baptism / SEE Ac 2:38; 8:16; 10:47, 48; 19:5; 22:16).

Q7: Should my children or infant be baptized?

A: No. It says that when people believed the good news of Jesus Christ, they were being baptized, both men and women (Ac 8:12), not children or infants. So it does not specifically mention children being baptized, and certainly not infants! For babies cannot yet even understand what is the gospel to first believe in it. For one must first be able to believe before he is baptized, for baptizers are commanded to only baptized those who could believe the gospel, not unbelievers, not infants (Mk 16:15, 16). Besides, Jesus said that the kingdom of God belongs to the children. But when they come of age, they too must obey the gospel to be saved, in repentance and water baptism. So, I tell children that I am glad they want to be water baptized, and that they should wait until they grow in to a man or a woman, and then ask to be water baptized then. But I do not say one has sinned if he has been baptized as a child. Yet I certainly reject infant baptism. How can a person without an adult body truly understand the sinful nature? Now in the book of Acts there were household conversions, but these households were even made up of relatives and close friends (Ac 10:33, 44), who had to first be able to hear/listen and understand and believe the gospel as well, as in the case of Cornelius and the Jailer and his household (Ac 16:32).

Q8: So when should a person be baptized?

A: When someone starts to believe (and is willing to confess or agree) that Christ died for his sins, was buried, and raised from the dead on the third day, and starts to repent because of it. For Philip baptized people "when the believed" (Ac 8:12), specifically people of full age, "men and women alike," not children or infants. Is one of full age to be considered a man or a woman?

Q9: Should I be baptized three times or only once?

A: Once. Even though we are to be baptized in the name of the three persons of God (Mt 28:19), acknowledging all three, because all three exist, we only need to be baptized (buried) once since Christ died only once, and was buried only once.

Q10: When I am water baptized, what gift will I receive?

A: Being water baptized is for receiving the gift of salvation and the gift of the Holy Spirit (Ac 2:38), the indwelling spirit of God, not a talent.

Q11: But wasn't Cornelius baptized with the Holy Spirit to be saved?

A: Yes, he was baptized by God, not man, with the Holy Spirit, which led to his salvation. For after Peter witnessed this baptism from heaven, the exact same experience he and the other apostles had, Peter then knew that He should water baptize this man who was a Gentile, and those who believed with him. For Peter was still apprehensive about making disciples in all nations among the Gentiles. And so he still commanded them to be water baptized (Ac 10:47, 48).

Q12: Do I have to be baptized with the Holy Spirit and speak in tongues to be saved?

A: No. First of all, it takes no talent to be saved. Tongues is a talent or gift, the ability to speak in more than one language, specifically for speaking the gospel to people in their own language (1 Cor 14:21, 22), like the apostles did on the day of Pentecost (Ac 2). In The Bible study on the Greater Gifts, and Non-Teaching Gifts, I have written about the exact meaning and purpose of this gift. As with each gift from God, He did not plan for everyone to have the same talent (1 Cor 12:17-25). So all are not gifted as one who can speak in different languages (tongues), or as teachers, and so on and so forth (1 Cor 12:29-31). Likewise, not everyone in the Bible who was saved was baptized by God in the Holy Spirit. So it is not required for salvation, but simply was done to begin to fulfill Joel's prophecy about it (Joel 2:28; Ac 2:14-21), marking the beginning of the last days, which evidently began after Christ rose from the dead, as signified with the beginning of Joel's prophecy being fulfilled in Acts 2 with the apostles. Besides, God is in control of the one baptism, Spirit baptism (and so were the apostles of Christ by the laying on of their hands, not ours / SEE Ac 8:14-18; 19:6). But we are in control of the other baptism, water baptism. He can administer the one from heaven, we can administer the other one on earth in water.

Q13: But when Peter said to repent and be baptized to receive the gift of the Holy Spirit (Ac 2:38), didn't he mean the baptism of the Holy Spirit, as evidenced by speaking in tongues?

A: No. He did not say that we would receive the gift of the Holy Spirit, but the gift of the Holy Spirit, meaning the indwelling person of God. In my Bible Study on the Greater Gifts, I point out the difference between the gift of the Holy Spirit, the gift of the Holy Spirit, and the baptism of the Holy Spirit. These are three different things. Besides, water baptism was never related to speaking in tongues, since it is specifically designed for calling on the name of the Lord for the remission of one's sins, not to receive a talent.

Q14: Who should baptize me?

A: Someone who will water baptize you in the right way, by immersion (buried Ro 6:4) and also for the right reason, for the forgiveness of your sins (Ac 2:38), preferably a Christian male, for this is the example and teaching in the Scriptures.

Q15: Since it says that God poured out His Spirit on mankind (Ac 2:17), doesn't this mean that water baptism can be pouring?

A: No. This is talking about spirit baptism from heaven, not water baptism. These are two different baptisms, for two different purposes. Besides, God chose to pour out His Spirit from heaven on a person, since He did not choose to lay it down like a lake in which people could be baptized by immersion, get it?

Q16: When Jesus said to go make disciples, baptizing them (Mt 28:18, 19), He did not specifically say "water" baptism. So why require water baptism when it is not clear here? Couldn't this mean some other kind of baptism for salvation than water baptism?

A: No. Make no mistake, He meant water baptism. The book of Acts records water baptisms, not some other kind of baptism. For example, it says that Philip simply **"preached Jesus" (Ac 8:35)** to the Ethiopian Eunuch, and yet he naturally responded to that name by saying, **"Look! Water! What prevents me from being baptized?" (Ac 8:36)**. Likewise, when Cornelius believed, and those with him, Peter said, **"who can refuse the water for these to be baptized?" (Ac 10:47, 48)**. So the apostles understood Jesus to mean water baptism. Besides, water baptism is the only baptism a baptizer can administer, and the only baptism which a person can submit or yield himself to under go, and it is the only baptism which we are commanded to do. Therefore, as an apostle said about his own baptism, **"Now why do you delay? Get up and be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on His name" (Ac 22:16)**, indicating a water baptism that washed away his sins through the name of the Lord (like Peter indicated in 1 Pe 3:20, 21).

Q17: What if I was not baptized in the right way or for the right reason?

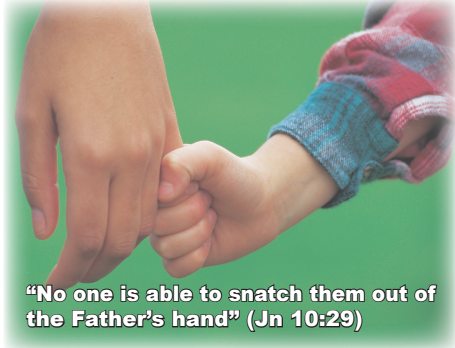
A: You should do it in the right way (immersion Ro 6:4) and for the right reason (to be saved / for the remission of your sins Mk 16:16; Ac 2:38). Then you will have done it right and therefore be righteous in the eyes of the Lord, not unrighteous in this matter. Why follow the tradition of men regarding baptism?

Q18: But isn't water baptism, as some say, an outward sign of an inward cleansing or a sign to the world that one is saved?

A: No. This is not what the Bible says. Instead, we are cleansed or "washed" of our sins in water baptism, as Paul said he was (Ac 22:16), by the name of the Lord. Water baptism is your appeal to God to clear your conscience of its sin (1 Pe 3:21), not a sign to the world. For in it you are showing God Almighty your faith in the name and commandment of His Son. You are not showing the world anything. It is to be done to God.

We can be saved by continuing in God's grace, not His wrath!

"Continue in His kindness **[grace]**; otherwise you also will be cut off **[wrath]**" Ro 11:22

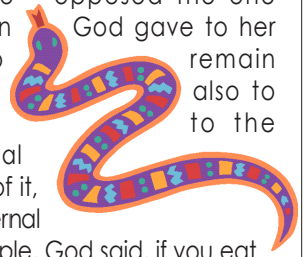


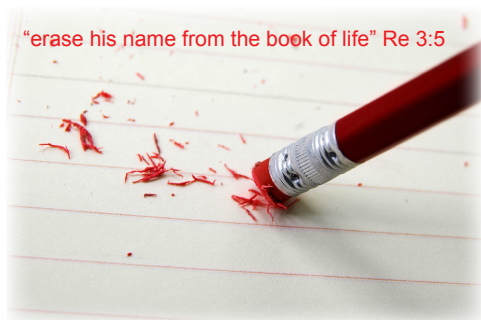
There is one key condition or principle to remaining saved

While it is true that no one is able to snatch us out of the hand of God (Jn 10:29), His fingers are not prison bars! If we wish, we can escape from His hand. He is not a jailer! He will let us leave if we desire to sin our way out of His hand. The parable of the "wayward son" illustrates this. For example, a son wanted to leave his father to enjoy the pleasures of sin (Lk 15:11-32). His father let him go, and said his son **"was lost,"** while in sin. But when his son repented from his sins and returned to his father's hand, the father said he **"was found"**. Likewise, if you desire to sin your way out of God's hand, He will let you go. Yet, He desires that you repent and return for everyone's joy and your own salvation. He will try to persuade you to be saved, with great and magnificent promises. But He will not force you to be saved. He is not a jailer! You are not His prisoner. You are His son. You are His daughter. So there is one condition to remaining saved; you must **"continue"** to hold on to God's hand, through continuing to hold on to the gospel. **"Continue in His kindness; otherwise you also will be cut off"** (Ro 11:22).

Satan has been fooling men on this subject from the beginning

It is undeniable! Satan misled Eve on eternal life, by telling her she would never die! He opposed the one condition God gave to her and Adam to remain alive and also to have access to the tree of eternal life and eat of it, to receive eternal life. For example, God said, if you eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil **"you will die"** (Ge 3:3). But Satan said, if you eat of it **"you surely will not die!"** (Ge 3:4). Eve believed Satan's lie of "eternal security," if you will, and she therefore ate the fruit and gave some to Adam. When God found out about this, He proved His word true, not Satan's. For God let them physically die, by removing them from the garden of Eden. Also, He did not permit them to be near the tree of eternal life. For He said He did not want them to reach out and eat of **"the tree of life"** and **"live forever"** (Ge 3:23). So they did not receive eternal life from God, since they did not continue in His kindness, so to speak, by keeping the one commandment or condition He gave to them for receiving it. And so we can see that their salvation was not "secure," as some like to mistakenly describe it. They did not have "eternal security". **God never promised it to them in this way, and He did not promise it to us in this way, without condition.**





We must continue in what God favors to be saved

We cannot continue in what God wraths and still be saved. If we do not **"repent...from dead works"** (He 6:1), we will be separated from Him, eternally. Isaiah said, **"The Lord's hand is not so short that it cannot save. But your iniquities [sins] have made a separation between you and your God"** (Is 59:2).

So while it is true that God's hand can reach down deep enough to save us from the pit of our sins, for He is very willing to do this, even eternally, it is also true that if we continue in certain sins, it will cause us to be separated from God, eternally. So, in regards to your own salvation from your sins:

"Do not be conceited [arrogant], but fear; for if God did not spare the natural branches [the Jews], He will not spare you [Christians], either. Behold then the [1] kindness [the grace] and [2] severity [the wrath] of God; to those who fell, severity, but to you, God's kindness, if [a condition] you continue in His kindness [grace]; otherwise you [Christians] also will be cut off [wrath]" (Ro 11:20, 21, 22). So you must "continue in His kindness; otherwise you also will be cut off".

God Himself will "cut off" from Himself any Christian who does not continue in what He favors. **"Therefore let him who thinks he stands take heed that he does not fall"** (1 Cor 10:12). The message from God is clear: it is possible to fall from God's saving grace by arrogantly thinking one could never fall, especially in regards to ones sins, if he continues in them.

So when the Lord said, **"no one is able to snatch them out of the Father's hand"** (Jn 10:29), He did not at all mean for this to be interpreted to exclude Himself from removing someone! Indeed, Jesus Himself said that if a Christian does not **"repent"** and **"overcome"** his sins, then He will **"erase his name from the book of life"** (Re 3:5). Now when someone's name is written in the book of life, he is saved. This is speaking about the book of eternal life. So obviously, by Jesus' own judgment, one can be saved, but later lost. One can lose his salvation if he continues in sin. But know for sure, he was once saved, since God wrote his name in the book of eternal life.

So, lest we fall in to the conceit of the Devil, and therefore receive the same condemnation (1 Tim 3:6), in humility, we must consider not only the grace of God, but also His wrath. **"Behold then the [1] kindness [the grace] and [2] severity [the wrath] of God"** (Ro 11:22). For even Jesus came to preach about both (Isa 61:2).

Conclusion

We can leave God's hand to pursue sin, and by continuing to do so, without repentance, God Himself will remove us from His hand. He will take us off the role of eternal life, erasing our names out of the book of eternal life, a book in which our names were once written when we were once saved by our faith in the gospel of Jesus Christ.

Notes: Paul said the gospel saves us "if" we to hold on to it (1 Cor 15:1, 2), indicating that we must keep holding on to God's hand through holding on to the words in the gospel. Peter said that it will be better for an unbeliever on the day of judgment than for a Christian who backslides (2 Pe 2:20-22). Paul feared that the disciples he once made could be lost, if the tempter came to them to lure them back in to their dead works (1 Thess 3:5). I am amazed that so many teachers do not have the same concern! We know this is because of the Devil's false teaching on "eternal security," which is not even a phrase or promise in the Bible! The Jews were once saved, but later lost, since they continued in their sins (Jude 1:5; 1 Cor 10:11). Yes, God did save them. But later He rejected them for continuing in certain sins. They were baptized in to Moses through the red sea. They ate and drank spiritual food, so to speak. But even so, God cut them off for not continuing in His kindness, in what He favors. Likewise, we can be water baptized in to Christ, and begin to eat the Lord's Supper, remembering His sacrifice for our sins. Yet, even so, if we continue in sin, God will also cut us off. So let us strive to stay in God's good graces, His favor. Indeed, let us grow in the grace of God (2 Pe 3:18). Let us be like Barnabas, whom the Scripture says was a good man, who encouraged Christians "to remain true to the Lord" (Ac 11:23). Amen.

Now Complete the
TEST on Salvation 2

"I learned that "the gospel" is the death, burial and resurrection of Jesus and that some translations of the Bible are better than others. The fact that the Bible was written to lead all mankind to the Messiah struck me the most. I did not realize that is what God intended it for. I just thought it was a "rule" book from God. I have always known that God loves me but knowing that He has given us the Bible so that all mankind can be led to Him just makes me understand things better." *Dennis, Texas*

"I learned that you must repent with sorrow in your heart and fix the wrong you have done. The marriage situations struck me the most. I need to live more by the word and I need to right some wrongs with some people." *Rose, Alaska*

"I really felt there were things in my life I need to look at, I need to repent of and witness more than I do. The eyes of my heart are opening." *Wanda, Washington*

"I learned how specific and strict the law is regarding marriage/divorce. I will be even more grateful and respectful of my own marriage, 34 years this February 28th by God's grace." *Fred, California*

"This study is the best I have come across in my 32 years as a Christian. Where were you in 1971???? Thanks so much for not arriving too late into my life." *Socorro, Florida*

"I was quite interested in the section on divorce and adultery. I have had many ask me about that. This lesson has opened my eyes on things I did not know and hope I can help myself and others see what they need to do to have not only salvation but a relationship with God." *Donna, Iowa*

"I learned that "Whom shall ever call on the name of the lord shall be saved" means through baptism not prayer." *Nicole, Texas*

"Now I am a true believer because before I had my doubts but now after this lesson I truly believe the Bible and God and Jesus to be true and not something that is made up like others believe. I BELIEVE." *Berkerria, Florida*

"The most important thing I learned was how the Bible was written to lead one to Christ. In the past I have thought of the Bible as just a book for believers, but now I understand it to be a book about the gospel for all of mankind." *Carl, Ohio*

"Hi. I've put off writing this letter because I don't know how to say this without sounding like a whining Christian baby. I feel so sad now that these lessons are done. They were a big part of my life that took me so much further in my Christian walk. I learned so many things about the roll of a Christian and even a lot more about myself. I've taken many study courses from many different Christian groups but never have I had such a fulfilling journey through the lessons of Truth and Faith as I have with these studies. I know I was led to the right place at the right time because I had so many unanswered questions that put my heart in the wrong place." *Your friend in Christ, Sharon*

What People Are Learning

“It has opened my eyes and heart to the true meaning of the gospels. I will be able to change my life around with the knowledge I have gained.” *Dee, North Carolina*

“I had no idea how much I didn’t know about the very basics. Thank you. I look forward to learning more.” *Ron, Canada*

“When I first started these studies I thought I knew a lot about the Bible to run my life in the right manner but actually I have found that I don’t know very much at all... I have learned so much from this and I think I was not on the right track until I studied this [salvation]... I have found the answers to keep me on the track in which God has intended for me to be.” *Mary, Indiana*

“This course may seem simple to some, but as an ordained minister that was losing a battle with Satan and losing all that has been taught to me, it is God sent \o/. I pray that many New Born and Old Born find this course as uplifting as I have.” *Pastor, Canada*

“This lesson was great and I thought that it was arranged so that anyone could... believe that Jesus is the Son of God.” *Diane, North Carolina*

“I love this Bible study because it is teaching me who God is and what I need to do (believe/trust and obey) in order to be in close relationship with Him. I am much encouraged and excited by it.” *Martha, Massachusetts*

“The most important new thing I learned in this lesson was the difference between true grace and false grace. There is so much false teaching that you must try hard to study the word of God in order to know the difference in what’s true and what’s false.” *Lola, New Jersey*

“I noticed that true and false gospel are extremely different in comparison. It’s funny when light is shed on things you’re in awe of it because I have heard preachers who preach false gospel, but because of lack of knowledge as the Bible says people perish. May God have mercy on those who are preaching that false grace or gospel.” *Zelfaron, New Jersey*

“The most important thing that I learned was what the gospel was and what I must do to obey the gospel. The thing that impacted me the most was that God left us all very specific directions, such as how to obey the gospel, and still people find them so hard to follow, including myself. This lesson showed me that there are things I must do to enter the kingdom of God and I will change my ways so that everything I do will please my God, my Father.” *Cayla, Wisconsin*